人物介绍
Introduction to Main Characters in the Text



丁力波 Dīng Lìbō
A Canadian student,
aged 21, male.
Gubo is his father;
Ding Yun is his mother.



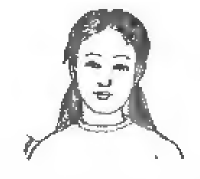
马大为 Mǎ Dàwéi
An American student,
aged 22, male.



林娜 Lín Nà
A British student,
aged 19, female.



宋华 Sòng Huá
A Chinese student,
aged 20, male.



王小云 Wáng Xiǎoyún
A Chinese student,
aged 20, female.



陆雨平 Lù Yǔpíng
A Chinese reporter,
aged 26, male.



陈老师 Chén lǎoshī
A Chinese teacher,
aged 30, female.



张教授 Zhāng jiàoshòu
A Chinese professor,
aged 48, male.



杨老师 Yáng lǎoshī
A Chinese teacher,
aged 32, male.

This lesson begins by introducing some sounds unique to the Chinese language, including tones. The Chinese writing system dates back more than four thousand years, and it is especially intriguing to see how Chinese characters developed since their basically pictographic origins in ancient China. By the end of the lesson, you will know eleven Chinese characters and be able to express some everyday greetings in Chinese.



第一课 Lesson 1

Nǐ hǎo
你好



一、课文 Text



(一)

【打招呼】Saying hello

Lù Yǔpíng: Lìbō, nǐ hǎo.①
陆雨平：力波，你好。

Lìbō: Nǐ hǎo, Lù Yǔpíng.
力波：你好，陆雨平。



生词 New Words

1. nǐ	Pr	你	you
2. hǎo	A	好	good; well; fine; O.K.
3. Lù Yǔpíng	PN	陆雨平	(name of a Chinese reporter)
4. Lìbō	PN	力波	(name of a Canadian student)



【问候】Greetings

Lìbō: Lín Nà, nǐ hǎo ma? ②
力波: 林 娜, 你 好 吗?

Lín Nà: Wǒ hěn hǎo, nǐ ne? ③
林 娜: 我 很 好, 你 呢?

Lìbō: Yě hěn hǎo. ④
力波: 也 很 好。



生词 New Words

1. ma	QPt	吗	(interrogative particle for question expecting yes-no answer)
2. wǒ	Pr	我	I; me
3. hěn	Adv	很	very
4. ne	MdPt	呢	(a modal particle used for elliptical questions)
5. yě	Adv	也[1]	too; also
6. Lín Nà	PN	林娜	(name of a British student)

二. 注释 Notes

① Nǐ hǎo.

"Hello!", "How do you do?"

This is the most common form of greeting in Chinese. It can be used at any time of day when meeting people for the first time or for people you already know. The response to this greeting form is also "你好"("Nǐ hǎo").

② Nǐ hǎo ma?

"How are you?"

This is also a form of greeting, often used after you have not seen someone for some time, and the response is usually "我很好"("Wǒ hěn hǎo") or other similar formulae.

③ Nǐ ne?

"And (how are) you?"

④ Yě hěn hǎo.

"(I am) fine (literally, very good), too."

This is an elliptical sentence, with the subject "我"(wǒ) omitted. In spoken Chinese, when the context is explicit and there is no ambiguity, the subject is often omitted. One may also say "很好"("Hěn hǎo") to answer the question "你好吗?"("Nǐ hǎo ma?").

三. 语音练习 Pronunciation Drills

声母 Initials:	b	p	m	n	l	h
韵母 Finals:	a	o	e	i	u	ü
	ao	en	ie	in	ing	uo

---

(1) Students are required to master the characters of the purple new words in this lesson.

1. 拼音 Spelling

bā	bō	bī	bū	bīn	bīng
pā	pō	pī	pū	pīn	pīng
mā	mō	mī	mū		
nē	nāo	niē			
lē	lāo	liē	luō		
hē	hāo		huō		

2. 四声 The four tones

ā	á	ǎ	à	
nī	ní	nǐ	nì	
hāo	háo	hǎo	hào	nǐ hǎo
lī	lí	lǐ	lì	
bō	bó	bǒ	bò	Lìbō
līn	lín	lǐn	lìn	
nā	ná	nǎ	nà	Lín Nà
lū	lú	lǔ	lù	
yū	yú	yǔ	yù	
pīng	píng			Lù Yǔpíng
wō		wǒ	wò	
	hén	hěn	hèn	wǒ hěn hǎo
yē	yé	yě	yè	yě hěn hǎo

3. 辨音 Sound discrimination

bā —— pā (eight)　　nǚ —— nǔ (female)　　wǔ —— hǔ (five) (tiger)

bīng —— bīn (ice)　　piě —— biě (left-falling strokes)　　huǒ —— wǒ (fire) (I)

4. 辨调 Tone discrimination

mǎ —— mā (horse) (mom)　　mù —— mǔ (wood)　　yī —— yí (one)

yě —— yè (also) (night)　　lì —— lǐ (strength) (in)　　mén —— mèn (door)

5. 三声变调 Third-tone sandhi

nǐ hǎo　　hěn hǎo　　yě hǎo　　yě hěn hǎo

6. 朗读下列课堂用语 Read the following classroom expressions aloud

Nǐ hǎo.

Nǐmen hǎo.

四. 会话练习 Conversation Practice

KEY SENTENCES

1. Nǐ hǎo.
2. Nǐ hǎo ma?
3. Wǒ hěn hǎo, nǐ ne?
4. Yě hěn hǎo.

(一)【打招呼 Saying hello】

1. 完成下列会话 Complete the following dialogue

Lín Nà：Lìbō, nǐ hǎo!

Lìbō：________________.

2. 看图会话 Make a dialogue based on the picture

(1) A：________________.

B：________________.



(2) A：________________.

B：________________.



(二)【问候 Greetings】

1. 完成下列会话 Complete the following dialogue

Mǎ Lì: Nǐ hǎo ma?

Lù Yì: ______________, ______________?

Mǎ Lì: Wǒ yě hěn hǎo.

2. 情景会话 Situational dialogue

You run into a Chinese friend whom you haven't seen for a long time. What will you say to him/her?

(三) 听述 Listen and repeat

你好吗?

我很好,你呢?

我也很好。

五. 语音 Phonetics

1. 声母和韵母 Initials and finals

A syllable in the common speech of modern Chinese usually consists of an initial, which is a consonant that begins the syllable, and a final, which constitutes the rest of the syllable. For example, in the syllable "píng", "p" is the initial and "ing" is the final. A syllable can stand without an initial, such as "yě", but all syllables must have a final. In the common speech of modern Chinese, there are altogether 21 initials and 38 finals.

2. 发音要领 Pronunciation key

Initials: m, n, l, h are pronounced similarly to their counterparts in the English language.

b like "p" in "speak" (unaspirated, voiceless)

p like "p" in "park" (aspirated, voiceless)

Note: Particular attention should be paid to the pronunciation of the aspirated and unaspirated consonants: b-p.

Finals: e like "e" in "her"

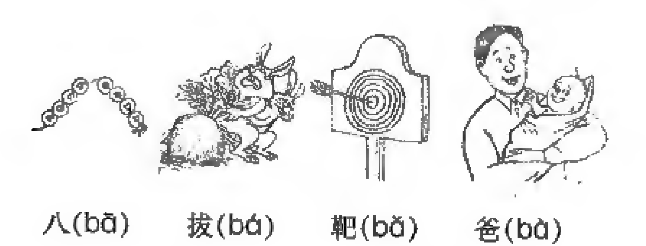
ie like "ye" in "yes"

-ng (final) a nasalised sound like the "ng" in "bang" without pronouncing the "g"

Note: The pronunciation of the "e" in a compound final is different from that of the simple final "e".

3. 声调 Tones

Chinese is a tonal language in which the tones convey differences in meaning.



八(bā) 拔(bá) 靶(bǎ) 爸(bà)

In common speech there are four basic tones, represented respectively by the following tone marks:

"ˉ" for the first tone,

"ˊ" for the second tone,

"ˇ" for the third tone, and

"ˋ" for the fourth tone.

When a syllable contains only a single vowel, the tone mark is placed directly above the vowel letter as in "lù" and "hěn". The dot over the vowel "i" should be dropped if the tone mark is placed above it, as in "nǐ", "nín" and "píng". When the final of the syllable is composed of two or more vowels, the tone mark should be placed above the vowel pronounced with the mouth widest open (e.g. hǎo).

The openness of the mouth for the vowels, from widest to smallest is as follows:

a o e i u ü

4. 三声变调 Third-tone sandhi

A third tone, when immediately followed by another third tone, should be pronounced as the second tone, but with the tone mark "ˇ" remaining unchanged. For example:

nǐ hǎo → ní hǎo　　Wǒ hěn hǎo. → Wó hén hǎo.

hěn hǎo → hén hǎo　　Yě hěn hǎo. → Yé hén hǎo.

5. 拼写规则 Spelling rules

At the beginning of a syllable, "i" is written as "y" (e.g. iě → yě). "i" is written as "yi" when it forms a syllable all by itself (e.g. ī → yī).

At the beginning of a syllable, "u" is written as "w" (e.g. uǒ → wǒ). "u" is written as "wu" when it forms a syllable all by itself (e.g. ǔ → wǔ).

When "ü" is at the beginning of a syllable or forms a syllable by itself, a "y" is added to it and the two dots over it are omitted (e.g. ǚ → yǔ).

六. 语法 Grammar

汉语的语序 Word order in Chinese sentences

The main characteristic of Chinese grammar is that it lacks of morphological changes in person, tense, gender, number, and case in the strict sense. The word order, however, is very important to convey different grammatical meanings. The subject of a sentence is usually placed before the predicate. For example:

Subject	Predicate
你 Nǐ	好。 hǎo.
我 Wǒ	很 好。 hěn hǎo.
力波 Lìbō	也 很 好。 yě hěn hǎo.

七. 汉字 Chinese Characters

Chinese characters originated from pictures. The history of their formation is very long, dating back to remote antiquity. Present-day Chinese characters, which evolved from ancient Chinese characters, are square-shaped. Here are some examples illustrating their long evolution:

Picture	Oracle Bone Inscription	Small Seal Character	Official Script	Complex Character in Regular Script	Simplified Character in Regular Script
			馬	馬	马

1. 汉字基本笔画 Basic strokes of Chinese characters

Chinese characters are written by combining various kinds of "strokes". These strokes can be divided into "basic" strokes and "combined" strokes.

Basic strokes of Chinese characters

stroke	Name	Example	Way to Write
丶 ↘	diǎn	门	The dot is written from top to bottom-right, as in the first stroke of "门".
一 →	héng	一	The horizontal stroke is written from left to right.
丨 ↓	shù	木	The vertical stroke is written from top downward to bottom, as in the second stroke of "木".
丿 ↙	piě	力	The downward-left stroke is written from top to bottom-left, as in the second stroke of "力".
㇏ ↘	nà	八	The downward-right stroke is written from top to bottom-right, as in the second stroke of "八".
㇀ ↗	tí	我	The upward stroke is written from bottom-left to top-right, as in the fourth stroke of "我".

2. 认写基本汉字 Learn and write basic Chinese characters

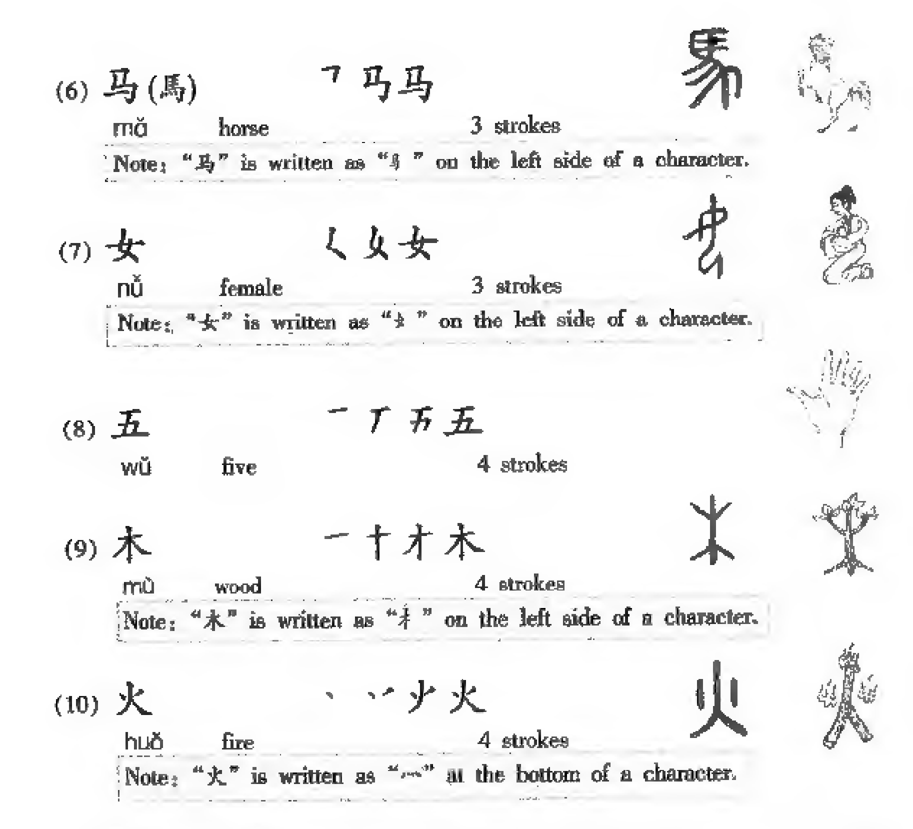
(1) 一 yī one 一 1 stroke

(2) 八 bā eight 丿 八 2 strokes

(3) 力 lì strength ㇆ 力 2 strokes

(4) 门(門) mén door 丶 亻 门 3 strokes

(5) 也 yě too; also ㇆ 力 也 3 strokes



(6) 马(馬) ㇇ 马 马

mǎ horse 3 strokes

Note: "马" is written as "马" on the left side of a character.

(7) 女 ㄑ 女 女

nǚ female 3 strokes

Note: "女" is written as "女" on the left side of a character.

(8) 五 一 丅 五 五

wǔ five 4 strokes

(9) 木 一 十 才 木

mù wood 4 strokes

Note: "木" is written as "木" on the left side of a character.

(10) 火 丶 丷 少 火

huǒ fire 4 strokes

Note: "火" is written as "灬" at the bottom of a character.

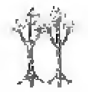
3. 认写课文中的汉字 Learn and write the Chinese characters appearing in the texts

林 lín

林 → 木 + 木







文化知识 Cultural Notes

The Chinese Language (*Hanyu*) and "Common Speech" (*Putonghua*)

Scholars think Chinese writing originated almost four thousand years ago and that the spoken language goes back to remote antiquity, making it one of the world's oldest languages. In spite of its great age, Chinese is now one of the most widely used living languages. The language is spoken in many dialects within China, as well as in many overseas Chinese communities, especially in Southeast Asia, Europe, and the Americas. And there are more than a billion native speakers of Chinese worldwide. It is one of the languages the United Nations uses when conducting official business.

Chinese belongs to the Sino-Tibetan language family. *Hanyu*, literally "language of the *Han*", refers to the standard Chinese language, and is spoken by the *Han*, *Hui*, *Manchu*, and other ethnic groups that constitute 94% of the population of China. There are fifty-six recognized ethnic groups in China, using as many as eighty different languages.

Chinese includes variants from seven main dialect groups. The northern or Mandarin dialect covers three fourths of China's territory and includes two thirds of its population. Standard Chinese is also known by its official designation, *Putonghua*, literally "common speech". *Putonghua* is based on the northern dialect, using the dialect of Beijing as the basis for its pronunciation and modern vernacular literature for its grammatical structure. This is the Chinese that is taught in this textbook.

Have you ever wanted to say hello in Chinese to your friends? By the end of this lesson, you will be able to greet others and express your needs.

第二课 Lesson 2

Nǐ máng ma
你 忙 吗

一、课文 Text



【问候别人】Greetings

Lín Nà: Lù Yǔpíng, nǐ hǎo ma?
林 娜: 陆 雨平, 你 好 吗?

Lù Yǔpíng: Wǒ hěn hǎo. Nǐ bàba、māma hǎo ma? ①
陆 雨平: 我 很 好。你 爸爸、妈妈 好 吗?

Lín Nà: Tāmen dōu hěn hǎo. ② Nǐ máng ma?
林 娜: 他们 都 很 好。你 忙 吗?

Lù Yǔpíng: Wǒ bù máng. Nǐ nán péngyou ne?
陆 雨平: 我 不 忙。你 男 朋友 呢?

Lín Nà: Tā hěn máng.
林 娜: 他 很 忙。



生词 New Words

1. máng	A	忙	busy
*2. ma	QPt	吗	(a particle used for questions expecting a yes-no answer)[1]
3. bàba	N	爸爸	dad
4. māma	N	妈妈	mom
5. tāmen	Pr	他们	they; them
tā	Pr	他	he; him
men	Suf	们	(used after pronouns 我,你,他 or certain nouns to denote plural)
6. dōu	Adv	都	both; all
7. bù	Adv	不	not; no
8. nán	A	男	male
9. péngyou	N	朋友	friend
*10. ne	MdPt	呢	(a modal particle used for elliptical questions)



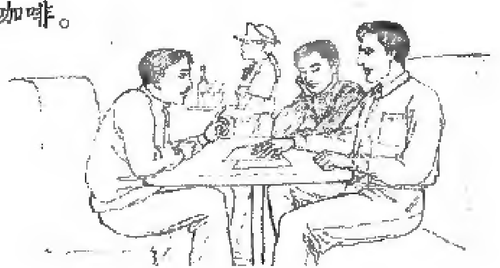
【问需要】Asking what someone wants

Dīng Lìbō: Gēge, nǐ yào kāfēi ma? ③
丁 力波: 哥哥, 你 要 咖啡 吗?

Gēge: Wǒ yào kāfēi.
哥哥: 我 要 咖啡。

Dìdi: Wǒ yě yào kāfēi. ④
弟弟: 我 也 要 咖啡。

Dīng Lìbō: Hǎo, wǒmen dōu hē kāfēi. ⑤
丁 力波: 好, 我们 都 喝 咖啡。



(1) Words marked by an asterisk have appeared in previous lessons.

生词 New Words

1. gēge	N	哥哥	elder brother
2. yào	V	要	to want
3. kāfēi	N	咖啡	coffee
4. dìdi	N	弟弟	younger brother
5. wǒmen	Pr	我们	we; us
6. hē	V	喝	to drink
7. Dīng	PN	丁	(a surname)

二、注释 Notes

① Nǐ bàba、māma hǎo ma?

"How are your mom and dad?"

nǐ bàba —— your dad, nǐ māma —— your mom,

nǐ nán péngyou —— your boyfriend.

② Tāmen dōu hěn hǎo.

"They are both fine (literally, very good)."

③ Nǐ yào kāfēi ma?

"Do you want coffee?"

"你要…吗?"("Nǐ yào … ma?") is a sentence pattern commonly used when asking what others want, whereas "我要…"("Wǒ yào …") is used to express what "I want".

④ Wǒ yě yào kāfēi.

"I want coffee, too."

⑤ Wǒmen dōu hē kāfēi.

"We all drink coffee."

三、语音练习 Pronunciation Drills

声母 Initials: d t g k f

韵母 Finals: ei ou an ang eng iao iou(-iu)

1. 拼音 Spelling

dē	dōu	dān	dāng
tē	tōu	tān	tāng
gē	gōu	gān	gāng
kē	kōu	kān	kāng

bēi	bān	bēng	biāo
pēi	pān	pēng	piāo
fēi	fān	fēng	diū
hēi	hān	hēng	niū

2. 四声 The four tones

tā		tǎ	tà	
mēn	mén		mèn	tāmen
wō		wǒ	wò	wǒmen
nī	ní	nǐ	nì	nǐmen
nān	nán	nǎn	nàn	
pēng	péng	pěng	pèng	
yōu	yóu	yǒu	yòu	nán péngyou
bū	bú	bǔ	bù	
	máng	mǎng		bù máng
gē	gé	gě	gè	gēge
dī	dí	dǐ	dì	dìdi
hē	hé		hè	
kā		kǎ		
fēi	féi	fěi	fèi	hē kāfēi

3. 辨音 Sound discrimination

dà (big) —— tà　　kě (may) —— gě　　kǒu (mouth) —— gǒu (dog)

dōu (all) —— duō (many)　　gēn (to follow) —— gēng　　dīng (nail) —— tīng (to listen)

4. 辨调 Tone discrimination

dāo (knife) —— dào　　tǔ (soil) —— tù　　yòu (again) —— yǒu (to have)

ní (Buddhist nun) —— nǐ　　liù (six) —— liǔ　　kàn (to see) —— kǎn

5. 轻声 Neutral tone

bàba　māma　gēge　dìdi
nǐmen　wǒmen　tāmen
hǎo ma?　Nǐ ne?　Nǐ nán péngyou ne?

6. 双音节连读 Practice on disyllabic words

yǐnliào (drinks)　yéye (grandpa)
kělè (coke)　mèimei (younger sister)
hànbǎo (hamburger)　fāyīn (pronunciation)
píngguǒ (apple)　hēibǎn (blackboard)

7. 朗读下列课堂用语 Read the following classroom expressions aloud

Tīng wǒ fāyīn.　(Listen to my pronunciation.)
Kàn hēibǎn.　(Look at the blackboard.)

四、会话练习 Conversation Practice

KEY SENTENCES
1. Tāmen dōu hěn hǎo.
2. Nǐ máng ma?
3. Wǒ bù máng.
4. Nǐ yào kāfēi ma?
5. Wǒ yào kāfēi.
6. Wǒmen dōu hē kāfēi.

(一)【问候别人 Greetings】

完成下列会话 Complete the following dialogues

(1) A: Dà Lín, nǐ máng ma?
B: ______. Nǐ ne?
A: ______.

(2) A: Nǐ bàba māma hǎo ma?
B: ______. Nǐ gēge ne?
A: ______.

(3) A: Nǐ dìdi hǎo ma?
B: ______. Nǐ ______ ne?
A: ______.

(二)【问需要 Asking what someone wants】

1. 完成下列会话 Complete the following dialogues

(1) A: Nín yào kāfēi ma?
B: Wǒ yào kāfēi.
A: Nǐ ne?
C: ______.

(2) A: Nǐ yào ______ ma?
B: ______.
A: Nǐ ne?
C: ______.

2. 看图会话 Make a dialogue based on the picture

(1) A: ______?
B: ______.

(2) A: ______?
B: ______.

三) 听述 Listen and repeat

你爸爸妈妈都好吗?
他们都很好。

五. 语音 Phonetics

1. 轻声 Neutral tone

In the common speech of modern Chinese, there are a number of syllables which are unstressed and are pronounced in a "weak" tone. This is known as the neutral tone and is indicated by the absence of a tone mark. For example:

吗 ma　　呢 ne　　们 men

2. 发音要领 Pronunciation key

Initials: f　is pronounced similarly to its counterpart in the English language
- d　like "t" in "stay" (unaspirated)
- t　like "t" in "tag" (aspirated)
- g　a soft unaspirated "k" sound
- k　like "k" in "kangaroo" (aspirated)

Note: Particular attention should be paid to the pronunciation of the aspirated and unaspirated consonants: d-t, g-k.

Finals: ei　like "ay" in "play" (light)
- ou　like "o" in "so"
- an　like "an" in "can" (without stressing the "n")

3. 拼写规则 Spelling rules

The compound final "iou" is written as "-iu" when it comes after an initial and the tone mark is placed on "u". For example: liù (six).

六. 语法 Grammar

1. 形容词谓语句 Sentences with an adjectival predicate

Subject	Predicate
你 Nǐ	好。 hǎo.
他 Tā	很 忙。 hěn máng.
我 Wǒ	不 忙。 bù máng.
他们 Tāmen	都 很 好。 dōu hěn hǎo.

Adjectives in Chinese can function directly as predicates. This kind of sentence is called a sentence with an adjectival predicate. Adjectives in this kind of sentence can be modified by adverbs such as "很", "也", and "都". The negative form of sentences with an adjectival predicate is generated by placing the negative adverb "不" before the adjective that functions as the predicate. For example: "我不忙".

Note: Adverbs such as "很", "也", and "都" must be placed before the adjective they modify.

2. 用"吗"的是非问句 "Yes-no" question with "吗"

A declarative sentence can be changed into a "yes-no" question by adding the question particle "吗" at the end of it.

Statement		Question
你好。 Nǐ hǎo.	→	你好吗? Nǐ hǎo ma?
他爸爸、妈妈都好。 Tā bàba māma dōu hǎo.	→	他爸爸、妈妈都好吗? Tā bàba māma dōu hǎo ma?
她忙。 Tā máng.	→	她忙吗? Tā máng ma?
你要咖啡。 Nǐ yào kāfēi.	→	你要咖啡吗? Nǐ yào kāfēi ma?

七. 汉字 Chinese Characters

1. 认写基本汉字 Learn and write basic Chinese characters

(1) 丁　一丁
dīng　nail　2 strokes

(2) 刀　
dāo　knife　2 strokes
Note: "刀" is written as "刂" on the right side of a character.

(3) 又　
yòu　again　2 strokes
Note: "又" was originally a pictograph of "the right hand".

(4) 大　
dà　big　3 strokes



(5) 口　丨 冂 口

kǒu　mouth　3 strokes



(6) 土　一 十 土

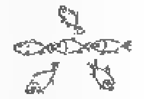
tǔ　earth　3 strokes

Note: "土" is written as "土" on the left side of a character.



(7) 六　丶 亠 六 六

liù　six　4 strokes



(8) 不　一 丆 不 不

bù　no, not　4 strokes



(9) 尼　㇆ コ 尸 尸 尼

ní　Buddhist nun　5 strokes



(10) 可　一 丁 可 可 可

kě　can, may　5 strokes

2. 认写课文中的汉字 Learn and write the Chinese characters appearing in the texts

(1) 吗 ma (嗎)

吗 → 口 + 马

("口" denotes the meaning of speaking, "马" denotes the pronunciation)

(2) 呢 ne

呢 → 口 + 尼

("口" denotes the meaning of speaking, "尼" denotes the pronunciation)

(3) 妈妈 māma (媽媽)

妈 → 女 + 马

("女" denotes the meaning of woman, "马" denotes the pronunciation)

(4) 哥哥 gēge

哥 → 可 + 可

文化知识　Cultural Notes

Chinese Characters and Simplified Script

The Chinese script is the only logographic writing system still in daily use in the world today. Unlike the alphabetic systems used by most languages, Chinese script is made up of characters, the majority of which are "pictophonetic". Most consist of one component indicating the sound of the character, the phonetic, combined with one semantic component, the signific or radical, which shows the category of meaning to which the character belongs.

Chinese characters represent monosyllables, and generally each character represents a single morpheme. The total number of Chinese characters is estimated at over fifty thousand, of which only five to eight thousand are frequently used, while three thousand are normally adequate for everyday situations.

A considerable number of Chinese characters are composed of numerous strokes and are therefore complicated to write. With a view to facilitating writing, modern scholars have made continuous attempts to simplify the writing system. The object of these language reforms has been twofold: to reduce the number of characters by eliminating complex variants, and to reduce the number of strokes in certain characters. What are known as "simplified characters" refer to graphs that have been thus altered; traditional characters, on the other hand, are those that retain their earlier forms.

The use of simplified characters is now official policy in the People's Republic of China, while traditional characters are restricted mainly to academic use or aesthetic purposes. Simplified characters have the advantages of being easier to learn, memorize, read and write. Here are two examples:

妈	mother	(simplified)	媽	mother	(traditional)
门	door	(simplified)	門	door	(traditional)

Simplified characters are used in this textbook, but traditional characters are also supplied for the convenience of the reader.

Now, would you like to use Chinese to learn more about the people you meet? This lesson will show you how to ask a person's occupation and nationality, as well as introduce friends, family and others. In addition, we will create compound words from basic words.

第三课 Lesson 3

Tā shì nǎ guó rén
她是哪国人

一、课文 Text



(一)

【认指人】Identifying people

Gēge: Lìbō, nà shì shéi?
哥哥: 力波，那是谁？

Dīng Lìbō: Nà shì wǒmen lǎoshī.
丁力波: 那是我们老师。

【问国籍】Asking someone's nationality

Gēge: Tā shì nǎ guó rén? [1]
哥哥: 她是哪国人？

Dīng Lìbō: Tā shì Zhōngguó rén. [2] Wǒmen lǎoshī dōu shì Zhōngguó rén.
丁力波: 她是中国人。我们老师都是中国人。



生词 New Words

1. tā	Pr	她	she; her
2. shì	V	是	to be
3. nǎ	QPr	哪	which
4. guó	N	国	country, nation
5. rén	N	人	people, person
6. nà	Pr	那	that
7. shéi	QPr	谁	who; whom
8. lǎoshī	N	老师	teacher
*9. dōu	Adv	都	both; all
10. Zhōngguó	PN	中国	China



(二)

Dīng Lìbō: Chén lǎoshī, nín hǎo! [3] Zhè shì wǒ gēge, [4] tā shì wàiyǔ lǎoshī.
丁力波: 陈老师，您好！这是我哥哥，他是外语老师。

Chén lǎoshī: Nǐ hǎo.
陈老师: 你好。

Dīng Lìbō: Zhè shì wǒ péngyou.
丁力波: 这是我朋友。

Chén lǎoshī: Nǐ hǎo! Nǐ yě shì lǎoshī ma?
陈老师: 你好！你也是老师吗？

Péngyou: Nín hǎo! Wǒ bú shì lǎoshī, wǒ shì yīshēng.
朋友: 您好！我不是老师，我是医生。

Chén lǎoshī: Lìbō, zhè shì nǐ nǎinai ma?
陈老师: 力波，这是你奶奶吗？

Dīng Lìbō: Bú shì, tā shì wǒ wàipó. [5]
丁力波: 不是，她是我外婆。

Chén lǎoshī: Wàipó, nín hǎo!
陈老师: 外婆，您好！

生词 New Words

1. nín	Pr	您	you (polite form)
2. zhè	Pr	这	this
*3. tā	Pr	她	she; her
4. wàiyǔ	N	外语	foreign language
*5. nǐ	Pr	你	you
6. yīshēng	N	医生	doctor; physician
7. nǎinai	N	奶奶	grandmother on the father's side
8. wàipó	N	外婆	grandmother on the mother's side
9. Chén	PN	陈	(a surname)

二、注释 Notes

① Tā shì nǎ guó rén?

"What's her nationality?"

There are two Chinese characters for the third person singular "tā": one is "他", used for a male; the other "她", refers to a female.

② Tā shì Zhōngguó rén.

"She is a Chinese."

To indicate the nationality of an individual, the character "人"(rén) is usually placed after the name of his/her country of origin. For example:

中国(Zhōngguó)——中国人(Zhōngguó rén)

③ Chén lǎoshī, nín hǎo!

In China, a person's position or occupation, such as the director of a factory, manager, section head, engineer, movie director, or teacher, is frequently used as a title to address him/her in preference to such expressions as Mr. or Miss. Surnames always precede the titles. It is considered impolite for a student to address a teacher directly by his/her personal name. "Surname + teacher" is the most proper form of address frequently used for a teacher, e.g., "Chén lǎoshī(陈老师)".

"nín(您)" is the polite form of "你", commonly used to refer to an elderly or a senior person during a conversation or to a person of the same generation when speaking on a formal occasion. People in Beijing are quite fond of using this form of address.

④ Zhè shì wǒ gēge.

"This is my elder brother."

When introducing someone to a person, we often use the sentence pattern "这是…" ("zhè shì…"). "是"(shì) is pronounced as a weak syllable.

⑤ Lìbō, zhè shì nǐ nǎinai ma? —— Bú shì, tā shì wǒ wàipó.

The Chinese language uses many words for referring to individuals in a family so that their specific relationship to other members of the family is made clear. Different words are used depending on whether a relative is on the mother's or wife's side or on the father's or husband's side. Some examples are "yéye" and "nǎinai" used by a child to address the parents of his/her father, differentiated from "wàigōng" and "wàipó" used to address his/her mother's parents.

三、语音练习 Pronunciation Drills

声母 Initials: zh ch sh r

韵母 Finals: -i [ʅ]

ai uai ong

1. 拼音 Spelling

zhā	chā	shā	
zhī	chī	shī	rī
zhē	chē	shē	rēng
zhāi	chāi	shāi	rāng
zhōu	chōu	shōu	
zhuō	chuō	shuō	
zhuāi	chuāi	shuāi	
zhōng	chōng		

2. 四声 The four tones

chā	chá	chǎ	chà	
	rú	rǔ	rù	
zhē	zhé	zhě	zhè	
shī	shí	shǐ	shì	zhè shì

lāo	láo	lǎo	lào	lǎoshī
chēn	chén	chěn	chèn	Chén lǎoshī
wāi		wǎi	wài	
yū	yú	yǔ	yù	wàiyǔ
yī	yí	yǐ	yì	
shēng	shéng	shěng	shèng	yīshēng
zhōng		zhǒng	zhòng	
guō	guó	guǒ	guò	Zhōngguó
	rén	rěn	rèn	Zhōngguó rén

3. 辨音 Sound discrimination

zhōng —— chōng (middle)　　shēng —— shāng (to be born)　　rì —— rè (sun) (hot)

bǐ —— pǐ (dagger)　　dǒng —— tǒng (to understand)　　ròu —— ruò (meat)

4. 辨调 Tone discrimination

shí —— shǐ (ten) (arrow)　　zhě —— zhè (person; thing) (this)　　rén —— rèn (person)

pái —— pài　　chéng —— chēng (city)　　zhuǎi —— zhuài

5. 半三声 Half third tone

lǎoshī	nǎinai	wǒmen	nǐmen
wǒ gēge	wǒ péngyou	wǒ nǎinai	
nǐ wàipó	nǐ bàba	nǎ guó rén	
hǎo ma	nǐ máng	hěn máng	
nǐ yào	wǒ yào	yě yào	kělè

6. 声调组合 Combination of tones

“ˉ”+“ˉ”	“ˉ”+“ˊ”	“ˉ”+“ˇ”	“ˉ”+“ˋ”	“ˉ”+“·”[1]
kāfēi	Zhōngguó	hēibǎn	shēngdiào (tone)	tāmen

[1] “·” here represents the neutral tone.

yīshēng	hē chá (to drink tea)	shēntǐ (body)	chīfàn (to eat a meal)	zhīdao (to know)

“ˊ”+“ˉ”	“ˊ”+“ˊ”	“ˊ”+“ˇ”	“ˊ”+“ˋ”	“ˊ”+“·”
túshū (books)	chángcháng (often)	niúnǎi (milk)	liúlì (fluent)	péngyou
chénggōng (success)	yínháng (bank)	píngguǒ (apple)	chídào (late)	yéye

7. 双音节连读 Practice on disyllabic words

gōngren (worker)	Yīngguó (England, UK)
shāngren (merchant)	Déguó (Germany)
lǜshī (lawyer)	Měiguó (America)
gànbu (cadre)	Fǎguó (France)
chǎngzhǎng (factory manager)	Éguó (Russia)
nóngmín (peasant)	Rìběn (Japan)

8. 朗读下列课堂用语 Read the following classroom expressions aloud

Dǎ kāi shū.　(Open the book.)

Gēn wǒ niàn.　(Read after me.)

Nǐmen niàn.　(Read out.)

Dǒng bu dǒng?　(Do you understand?)

Dǒng le.　(Yes, I/we understand.)

Bù dǒng.　(No, I/we don't understand.)

四、会话练习 Conversation Practice

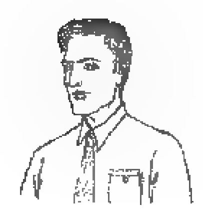
KEY SENTENCES

1. Nà shì shéi?
2. Nà shì wǒmen lǎoshī.
3. Tā shì nǎ guó rén?
4. Tā shì Zhōngguó rén.
5. Zhè shì wǒ péngyou.
6. Nǐ yě shì lǎoshī ma?
7. Wǒ bú shì lǎoshī, wǒ shì yīshēng.

(一)【认指人 Identifying people】

看图会话 Make a dialogue based on the picture





(1) A：Nà shì shéi?

B：Nà shì ________________.





(2) A：Tā shì shéi?

B：Tā shì ________________.

(二)【问国籍 Asking someone's nationality】

1. 完成下列会话 Complete the following dialogues

(1) A：Nín shì nǎ guó rén?

B：________________.

A：Tā ne?

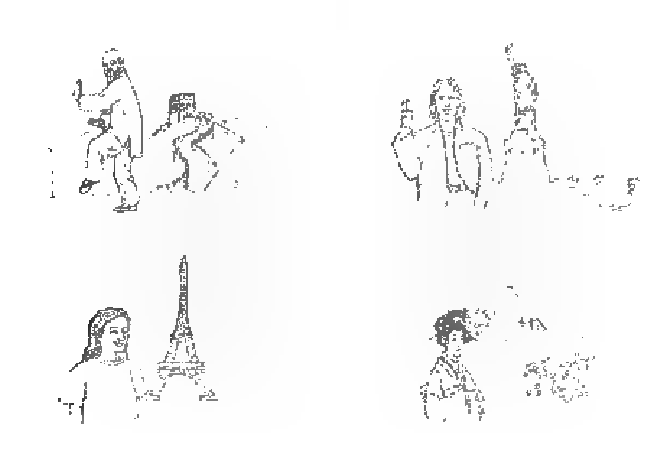
B：________________.

(2) A：Nín shì Yīngguó rén ma?

B：Bú shì，________________. Nín shì nǎ guó rén?

A：________________.

2. 看图会话 Make a dialogue based on the picture



A：Tā shì nǎ guó rén?

B：________________.

三)【介绍 Introducing people】

1. 完成下列会话 Complete the following dialogues

(1) A：Zhè shì Lín yīshēng. Zhè shì Chén lǎoshī.

B：________________.

C：Nín hǎo，Lín yīshēng.

(2) A：Zhè shì ____________. Zhè shì ____________.

B：________________.

C：________________.

2. 情景会话 Situational dialogue

Introduce your teacher and classmates.

四) 听述 Listen and repeat

那是谁？那是陈老师。她是中国人。这是我朋友，他不是老师，他是医生。

五. 语音 Phonetics

1. 三声变调 Third-tone sandhi

A third tone, when followed by a first, second or fourth tone, or most neutral tone syllables, usually becomes a half third tone, that is, a tone that only falls but does not rise. The tone mark is unchanged. For example:

nǐ gēge wǒ yào

nǐ máng ma?

2. "不"的变调 Tone sandhi of "不"

"不" is a fourth tone syllable by itself. But it becomes a second tone when followed by a fourth tone. For example:

bù hē bù máng bù hǎo

bú shì bú yào

3. 发音要领 Pronunciation key

Initials: zh like "j" in "jerk", but with the tip of the tongue curled farther back, unaspirated.

ch like "ch" in "church", but with the tip of the tongue curled farther back, aspirated.

sh like "sh" in "ship", but with the tip of the tongue curled farther back.

r as in "right" in English, but with lips unrounded, and the tip of the tongue curled farther back. Always pronounce the Chinese /r/ sound with a nice smile! ☺

Finals: ai like "y" in "sky" (light)

-i [ʅ] "-i [ʅ]" in "zhi", "chi", "shi" and "ri" is pronounced differently from the simple final "i [i]". After pronouncing the initials "zh", "ch", "sh" and "r", the tongue does not move. Care must be taken not to pronounce the simple final "i [i]", which is never found after "zh", "ch", "sh" or "r".

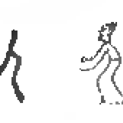
六. 汉字 Chinese Characters

1. 认写基本汉字 Learn and write basic Chinese characters

(1) 人 丿 人

rén people, person 2 strokes

Note: On the left side of a character, "人" is written as "亻".



(2) 十 

shí ten 2 strokes

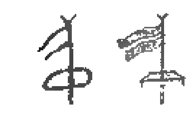


(3) 匕 丿 匕

bǐ dagger 2 strokes

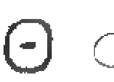
(4) 中 丨 冂 口 中

zhōng middle 4 strokes



(5) 日 丨 冂 日 日

rì sun 4 strokes



(6) 贝(貝) 丨 冂 贝 贝

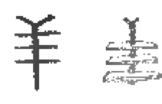
bèi shell 4 strokes



(7) 玉 一 二 千 王 玉

yù jade 5 strokes

Note: On the left side of a character, "玉" is written as "王".



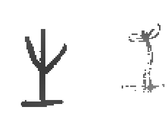
(8) 矢 丿 𠂉 𠂉 午 矢

shǐ arrow 5 strokes



(9) 生 丿 𠂉 𠂉 牛 生

shēng to be born; suffix denoting person 5 strokes



(10) 者 一 十 土 耂 耂 者 者 者 (耂+日)

zhě person; thing 8 strokes

2. 认写课文中已出现的汉字 Learn and write the Chinese characters appearing in the texts

(1) 她 tā

她 → 女 + 也

(The "female" side, "女", denotes something related to a woman.)

(2) 他 tā

他 → 亻 + 也

(The "standing person" side, "亻", denotes something related to a person.)

(3) 们 men (們)

们 → 亻 + 门

(The meaning side is "亻", and the phonetic side is "门".)

(4) 你 nǐ

你 → 亻 + 尔

(尔: ノ ㄅ 亇 尔 尔 5 strokes)

(The "standing person" side "亻" denotes something related to a person.)

阝 (yòu'ěrduo) (the "right-ear" side) ㇌ 阝 2 strokes

⺺ (nàzìpáng) (the "that" side) ㇆ ㇇ ⺕ ⺺ 4 strokes

(5) 那 nà

那 → ⺺ + 阝

(6) 哪 nǎ

哪 → 口 + 那

(The meaning side is "口", and the phonetic side is "那".)

(7) 娜 nà

娜 → 女 + 那

(The meaning side is "女", and the phonetic side is "那".)

(8) 都 dōu

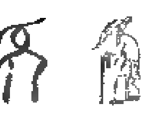
都 → 者 + 阝

耂 (lǎozìtóu) (the "old" top) 一 十 土 耂 4 strokes

巾 (jīnzìr) (the "towel" character) 丨 冂 巾 3 strokes

刂 (shīzìpáng) (the "teacher" side) 丨 刂 2 strokes

(9) 老师 lǎoshī (老師)



老 → 耂 + 匕

师 → 刂 + 一 + 巾

囗 (guózìkuàng) (The "country" frame, "囗", denotes the boundary of a country.)

丨 冂 囗 3 strokes

(10) 中国 Zhōngguó (中國)

国 → 囗 + 玉

匚 (yīzìkuàng) (the "doctor" frame) 一 匚 2 strokes

(11) 医生 yīshēng (醫生)

医 → 匚 + 矢

(医: 一 ア ア 至 至 买 医 7 strokes)

⻊ (pǐzìdǐ) (the "foot" bottom) ㇀ 丅 下 疋 疋 5 strokes

(12) 是 shì

是 → 日 + 疋

文化知识 Cultural Notes

Scheme for the Chinese Phonetic Alphabet

Chinese differs from alphabetic languages in that its written form is not directly related to its pronunciation. In order to provide phonetic notation for Chinese characters and to facilitate the consultation of dictionaries, phonologists drafted the "Scheme for the Chinese Phonetic Alphabet", and in 1958 the Chinese government passed an act to promote the application of this scheme, commonly known as the *pinyin* ("arranged sounds") system. *Pinyin* adopts the Latin alphabet to transcribe Chinese sounds, and four diacritical tone marks to indicate the different tones of Chinese characters. *Pinyin* is now widely used for the study of Chinese language, and has aided the popularization of standard Chinese (*Putonghua*). The use of *pinyin* in the study of Chinese provides many practical advantages for learning the language.

In this lesson, you will learn how to ask someone's name politely, how to introduce yourself, and how to ask for permission. The pronunciations of the Chinese initials introduced in this lesson are different than similar-sounding initials found in English, and so may seem unfamiliar to you. Don't be discouraged, however, for with daily practice you will surely be able to master them.

第四课 Lesson 4 Rènshi nǐ hěn gāoxìng 认识 你 很 高兴

一、课文 Text





【请求允许】Asking for permission

Lǎoshī: Kěyǐ jìnlai ma? ①
老师： 可以 进来 吗？

Lín Nà: Qǐng jìn! ② Yáng lǎoshī, nín hǎo. Zhè shì wǒ péngyou, tā shì jìzhě.
林 娜： 请 进！ 杨 老师，您 好。这 是 我 朋友，他 是 记者。

【问姓名】Asking someone's name

Lǎoshī: Qǐngwèn, nín guìxìng? ③
老师： 请问， 您 贵姓？

Lù Yǔpíng: Wǒ xìng Lù, jiào Lù Yǔpíng. ④
陆 雨平： 我 姓 陆，叫 陆 雨平。

Lǎoshī: Nǐ hǎo, Lù xiānsheng, rènshi nǐ hěn gāoxìng. ⑤
老师： 你 好， 陆 先生， 认识 你 很 高兴。

Lù Yǔpíng: Yáng lǎoshī, rènshi nín, wǒ yě hěn gāoxìng.
陆 雨平： 杨 老师，认识 您，我 也 很 高兴。

生词 New Words

1.	rènshi	V	认识	to know (somebody)
2.	gāoxìng	A	高兴	happy; pleased
3.	kěyǐ	OpV	可以	may
4.	jìnlai	VC	进来	to come in
	jìn	V	进	to enter
	lái	V	来	to come
5.	qǐng	V	请	please
*6.	nín	Pr	您	you (polite form)
*7.	péngyou	N	朋友	friend
8.	jìzhě	N	记者	reporter
9.	qǐngwèn	V	请问	May I ask...?
	wèn	V	问	to ask
10.	guìxìng	IE	贵姓	what's your honorable surname?
	xìng	V/N	姓	one's surname is…/surname
11.	jiào	V	叫	to be called
12.	xiānsheng	N	先生	Mr.
13.	Yáng	PN	杨	(a surname)





Lín Nà: Wǒ shì Yǔyán Xuéyuàn de xuésheng. ⑥ Wǒ xìng Lín, jiào Lín Nà. Wǒ shì Yīngguó rén. Nǐ xìng shénme? ⑦
林 娜： 我 是 语言 学院 的 学生。 我 姓 林，叫 林 娜。我 是 英国 人。你 姓 什么？

Mǎ Dàwéi: Wǒ xìng Mǎ, jiào Mǎ Dàwéi.
马 大为： 我 姓 马，叫 马 大为。

Lín Nà: Nǐ shì Jiānádà rén ma?
林 娜： 你 是 加拿大 人 吗？

Mǎ Dàwéi: Wǒ bú shì Jiānádà rén, wǒ shì Měiguó rén, yě shì Yǔyán Xuéyuàn de xuésheng. Wǒ xuéxí Hànyǔ.
马 大为： 我 不 是 加拿大 人，我 是 美国 人，也 是 语言 学院 的 学生。 我 学习 汉语。

生词 New Words

1. yǔyán	N	语言	language
2. xuéyuàn	N	学院	institute; college
3. de	Pt	的	(a possessive or modifying particle)
4. xuésheng	N	学生	student
5. shénme	QPr	什么	what
6. xuéxí	V	学习	to learn; to study
7. Hànyǔ	N	汉语	Chinese (language)
8. Yīngguó	PN	英国	Great Britain; England
9. Mǎ Dàwéi	PN	马大为	(name of an American student)
10. Jiānádà	PN	加拿大	Canada
11. Měiguó	PN	美国	the United States; America

二、注释 Notes

① Kěyǐ jìnlai ma?
"May I come in?"

② Qǐng jìn!
"Come in, please!"
"Qǐng(请)…" is an expression used for making polite requests.

③ Qǐngwèn, nín guìxìng?
"May I ask what is your (honorable) surname?"

This is a polite way of asking someone's surname. In China, when meeting someone for the first time, it is considered more polite to ask his/her surname rather than his/her full name. Notice that "guì(贵)" can only be used in combination with "nǐ(你)" or "nín(您)", and not with "wǒ(我)" or "tā (他/她)".

"Qǐngwèn(请问)" means "May I ask..." or "Excuse me, but...", and is a polite way of asking a question.

④ Wǒ xìng Lù, jiào Lù Yǔpíng.
"My surname is Lu, and my full name is Lu Yuping."

When answering the question "Nín guìxìng?", one can either give one's surname by saying "Wǒ xìng…", or give one's full name by saying "Wǒ jiào…" or say both "Wǒ xìng …, jiào …."

Note that in Chinese, one's surname always comes first, and the given name comes last.

⑤ Rènshi nǐ hěn gāoxìng.
"(I'm) glad to meet (literally, know) you."

⑥ Wǒ shì Yǔyán Xuéyuàn de xuésheng.
"I am a student at (literally, of) the Language Institute."

⑦ Nǐ xìng shénme?
"What's your surname?"

This informal way of asking someone's surname is appropriate when an adult is speaking to a child, or when young people are talking with each other.

三、语音练习 Pronunciation Drills

声母 Initials: j q x
韵母 Finals: ia ian iang
uei(-ui) uen(-un) üe üan

1. 拼音 Spelling

jī	qī	xī
jiā	qiā	xiā
jiān	qiān	xiān
jiāng	qiāng	xiāng
jīn	qīn	xīn

jīng	qīng	xīng
jū	qū	xū
juē	quē	xuē
juān	quān	xuān
guī	kuī	huī
zhūn	chūn	tūn

2. 四声 The four tones

jī	jí	jǐ	jì	
zhē	zhé	zhě	zhè	jìzhě
qīng	qíng	qǐng	qìng	
jīn		jǐn	jìn	qǐng jìn
guī		guǐ	guì	
xīng	xíng	xǐng	xìng	guìxìng
xiān	xián	xiǎn	xiàn	
shēng	shéng	shěng	shèng	xiānsheng
yū	yú	yǔ	yù	
yān	yán	yǎn	yàn	yǔyán
xuē	xué	xuě	xuè	
yuān	yuán	yuǎn	yuàn	xuéyuàn
xī	xí	xǐ	xì	xuéxí
hān	hán	hǎn	hàn	Hànyǔ
jiā	jiá	jiǎ	jià	Jiānádà

3. 辨音 Sound discrimination

jiāo (to teach)	qiāo	yuè (month)	yè (night)	duì (right)	tuì
tián (field)	tíng (to stop)	yán (speech)	yáng (sheep)	zhǐ (only)	chǐ (ruler)

4. 辨调 Tone discrimination

shǒu (hand)	shòu (thin)	xià (down)	xiā	shuǐ (water)	shuì (to sleep)
xīn (heart)	xìn (letter)	bái (white)	bǎi	xiǎo (small)	xiào (to laugh)

5. 声调组合 Combination of tones

"ˇ"+"ˉ"	"ˇ"+"ˊ"	"ˇ"+"ˇ"	"ˇ"+"ˋ"	"ˇ"+"。"
lǎoshī	yǔyán	kěyǐ	qǐng jìn	wǒmen
Běijīng (Beijing)	lǚxíng (to travel)	yǔfǎ (grammar)	kǎoshì (exam)	jiějie (elder sister)

"ˋ"+"ˉ"	"ˋ"+"ˊ"	"ˋ"+"ˇ"	"ˋ"+"ˋ"	"ˋ"+"。"
Lìbō	wàipó	Hànyǔ	guìxìng	mèimei
miànbāo (bread)	liànxí (exercise)	bàozhǐ (newspaper)	zhùyì (to pay attention to)	kèqi (courtesy)

6. 双音节连读 Practice on disyllabic words

tàitai (Mrs)	Yīngyǔ (English)
xiǎojiě (Miss)	Fǎyǔ (French)
nǚshì (Madam)	Déyǔ (German)
jīnglǐ (manager)	Éyǔ (Russian)
tóngshì (colleague)	Rìyǔ (Japanese)

7. 朗读下列课堂用语 Read the following classroom expressions aloud

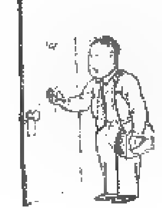
Zhùyì fāyīn.	(Pay attention to your pronunciation.)
Zhùyì shēngdiào.	(Pay attention to your tones.)
Duì bu duì?	(Is it right?)
Duì le.	(It's right.)

四. 会话练习 Conversation Practice

KEY SENTENCES
1. Kěyǐ jìnlai ma?
2. Qǐng jìn!
3. Nín guìxìng?
4. Wǒ xìng Lù, jiào Lù Yǔpíng.
5. Rènshi nǐ hěn gāoxìng.
6. Wǒ shì Yǔyán Xuéyuàn de xuésheng.
7. Wǒ xuéxí Hànyǔ.

(一)【请求允许 Asking for permission】

看图会话 Make a dialogue based on the picture



A: ________________________?

B: ________________________.

(二)【问姓名 Asking someone's name】

完成下列会话 Complete the following dialogues

(1) A: Nín guìxìng?

B: Wǒ xìng ________, jiào ________________.

A: Wǒ jiào ____________. ____________wǒ hěn gāoxìng.

B: ________________________.

(2) A: Nǐ xìng shénme?

B: ________________________.

(3) A: Tā jiào shénme?

B: ________________________.

(4) A: Tā xìng shénme?

B: ________________________.

(三)【自我介绍 Introducing oneself】

情景会话 Situational dialogue

Ask everyone to introduce himself/herself in a meeting by imitating Dialogue II in the text.

(四) 听述 Listen and repeat

请进。

您贵姓?

我叫马大为,是语言学院的学生。我学习汉语,杨先生是我们的老师。陆雨平是我朋友,他是记者。认识他,我很高兴。

五. 语音 Phonetics

1. 发音要领 Pronunciation key

Initials: j is an unaspirated voiceless palatal affricate. To produce this sound, first raise the front of the tongue to the hard palate and press the tip of the tongue against the back of the lower teeth, and then loosen the tongue and let the air squeeze out through the channel thus made. The sound is unaspirated and the vocal cords do not vibrate.

q is an aspirated voiceless palatal affricate. It is produced in the same manner as "j", but it is aspirated.

x is a voiceless palatal fricative. To produce it, first raise the front of the tongue toward (but not touching) the hard palate and then let the air squeeze out. The vocal cords do not vibrate.

Note: The finals that can be combined with "j", "q" and "x" are limited to "i", "ü" and compound finals that start with "i" or "ü".

2. 拼写规则 Spelling rules

(1) When the compound final "uei" is combined with initials, it is simplified to -ui and the tone mark is written over "i". For example: guì.

(2) When the compound final "uen" is combined with initials, it is simplified to -un. For example: lùn.

(3) When "ü" is combined with j, q and x, the two dots over it are omitted. For example: xué. "y" is added to the compound finals which start with "ü" and the two dots over it are omitted. For example: Yǔyán Xuéyuàn.

Note: "j", "q", and "x" are never combined with "u" and "a".

六. 语法 Grammar

"是"字句(1) Sentences with "是" (1)

Subject	Predicate			
	Adv	V"是"	N/NP	Pt
他 Tā		是 shì	老师。 lǎoshī.	
马 大为 Mǎ Dàwéi	不 bú	是 shì	老师。 lǎoshī.	
她 Tā		是 shì	学生 xuésheng	吗? ma?

In an "A 是 B" sentence, the verb "是" is used to connect the two parts. Its negative form is made by putting "不" before the verb "是". If the sentence is not particularly emphatic, "是" is read softly.

Note: The adverb "不" must be placed before "是".

七. 汉字 Chinese Characters

1. 笔顺规则 Rules of stroke order

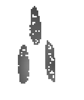
Example	Stroke Order	Rule to Write
十	一 十	Horizontal before vertical
人	丿 人	Downward-left before downward-right
妈	女 妈	From left to right
只	口 只	From top to bottom
月	冂 月	From outside to inside
国	冂 国 国	Outside before inside before closing
小	亅 小 小	Middle before two sides

2. 认写基本汉字 Learn and write basic Chinese characters

(1) 七 一七
qī seven 2 strokes



(2) 小 亅 小 小
xiǎo small, little 3 strokes




(3) 心 丶 心 心 心
xīn heart 4 strokes



Note: On the left side of a character, "心" is written as "忄", as in "忙".

(4) 水 亅 刀 水 水
shuǐ water 4 strokes



Note: On the left side of a character, "水" is written as "氵", as in "汉".

(5) 月 丿 月 月 月
yuè moon 4 strokes




(6) 手 ˊ 二 三 手
shǒu hand 4 strokes



Note: On the left side of a character, "手" is written as "扌".

(7) 田 丨 冂 日 田 田
tián field 5 strokes



(8) 白 ノ 亻 白 白 白 (丿 + 日)
bái white 5 strokes

(9) 只 丨 口 口 尸 只 (口 + 八)
zhǐ only 5 strokes

(10) 言 丶 亠 亠 言 言 言 言
yán speech 7 strokes



Note: On the left side of a character, "言" is written as "讠", as in "认识".

3. 认写课文中的汉字 Learn and write the Chinese characters appearing in the texts

(1) 认识 rènshi (認識)

认 → 讠 + 人

("讠", the meaning side plus the phonetic side, "人".)

识 → 讠 + 只

("讠", the meaning side, denotes language-related behavior.)

(2) 语言 yǔyán (語言)

语 → 讠 + 五 + 口

氵 (sāndiǎnshuǐ) (the "three-drops-of-water" side) 丶 丶 氵 3 strokes

(3) 汉语 Hànyǔ (漢語)

汉 → 氵 + 又

(4) 您 nín

您 → 你 + 心

𠂇 (yǒuzìtóu) (the "to have" top) 一 𠂇 2 strokes

(5) 朋友 péngyou

朋 → 月 + 月

友 → 𠂇 + 又

(6) 贵姓 guìxìng (貴姓)

贵 → 中 + 一 + 贝

姓 → 女 + 生

丩 (jiàozìpáng) (the "calling" side) 𠃌 丩 2 strokes

(7) 叫 jiào

叫 → 口 + 丩

勺 (sháozìpáng) (the "ladle" side) 丿 勹 勺 3 strokes

(8) 的 de

的 → 白 + 勺

How will you be able to find your way around in China? By the end of this lesson, you should be able to ask directions, look for people, express gratitude and regret, and say goodbye in Chinese. Remember to keep practicing your pronunciation and tones every day.

第五课 Lesson 5

Cāntīng zài nǎr
餐厅 在 哪儿

一、课文 Text

(一)

Mǎ Dàwéi: Qǐngwèn, zhè shì Wáng Xiǎoyún de sùshè ma?
马 大为: 请问, 这 是 王 小云 的 宿舍 吗?

Nǚ xuésheng: Shì. Qǐng jìn, qǐng zuò.
女 学生: 是。请 进, 请 坐。

【找人】Looking for someone

Mǎ Dàwéi: Xièxie. Wáng Xiǎoyún zài ma?[1]
马 大为: 谢谢。王 小云 在 吗?

Nǚ xuésheng: Tā bú zài.
女 学生: 她 不 在。

Mǎ Dàwéi: Tā zài nǎr?[2]
马 大为: 她 在 哪儿?

Nǚ xuésheng: Duìbuqǐ, wǒ bù zhīdao.[3]
女 学生: 对不起, 我 不 知道。

Mǎ Dàwéi: Méi guānxi. Hǎo, zàijiàn.
马 大为: 没 关系。好, 再见。

Nǚ xuésheng: Zàijiàn.
女 学生: 再见。

【告别】Saying goodbye





生词 New Words

1.	cāntīng	N	餐厅	dining room
2.	zài	V	在	be (here, there); to be (in, on, at)
3.	nǎr	QPr	哪儿	where
*4.	qǐngwèn	V	请问	May I ask...?
	wèn	V	问	to ask
*5.	zhè	Pr	这	this
6.	sùshè	N	宿舍	dormitory
7.	nǚ	A	女	female
*8.	xuésheng	N	学生	student
*9.	jìn	V	进	to enter
10.	zuò	V	坐	to sit
11.	xièxie	V	谢谢	to thank
12.	duìbuqǐ	IE	对不起	I'm sorry
*13.	wǒ	Pr	我	I; me
14.	zhīdao	V	知道	to know
15.	méi guānxi	IE	没关系	never mind; it doesn't matter
*16.	hǎo	A	好	good; well; fine; O.K.
17.	zàijiàn	IE	再见	good-bye
	zài	Adv	再	again
18.	Wáng Xiǎoyún	PN	王小云	(name of a Chinese student)

(二)

【问地点】Asking for directions

Mǎ Dàwéi: Xiǎojiě, qǐngwèn cāntīng zài nǎr?[4]
马 大为: 小姐, 请问 餐厅 在 哪儿?

Xiǎojiě: Zài èr céng èr líng sì hào.[5]
小姐: 在 二 层 二 〇 四 号。



Mǎ Dàwéi: Xièxie.
马 大为: 谢 谢。

【道谢】Expressing thanks

Xiǎojiě: Búyòng xiè.[6]
小姐: 不用 谢。





Sòng Huá: Dàwéi, wǒmen zài zhèr.
宋 华： 大为， 我们 在 这儿。

Mǎ Dàwéi: Duìbuqǐ, wǒ lái wǎn le. ⑦
马 大为： 对不起，我 来 晚 了。

Wáng Xiǎoyún: Méi guānxi.
王 小云： 没 关系。

生词 New Words

1. xiǎojiě	N	小姐	Miss; young lady
2. èr	Nu	二	two
3. céng	M	层	story; floor
4. líng	Nu	〇	zero
5. sì	Nu	四	four
6. hào	N	号	number
7. búyòng	Adv	不用	need not
8. zhèr	Pr	这儿	here
9. wǎn	A	晚	late
10. le	Pt	了	(modal partical/aspect partical)
11. Sòng Huá	PN	宋华	(name of a Chinese student)



二. 注释 Notes

① Wáng Xiǎoyún zài ma?
"Is Wang Xiaoyun in?"

② Tā zài nǎr?
"Where is she?"

③ Duìbuqǐ, wǒ bù zhīdao.
"duìbuqǐ(对不起)" is a phrase commonly used in making excuses or apologies, and the response to it is usually "méi guānxi(没关系)".

④ Cāntīng zài nǎr?
"Where is the dining hall?"

⑤ Zài èr céng èr líng sì hào.
"It's in No. 204 on the second floor."
In Chinese the ground floor of a building is considered to be the first floor.

⑥ Búyòng xiè.
"Don't mention it."
This phrase is used as a response to an expression of thanks. One may also say, "Bú xiè(不谢)".

⑦ Duìbuqǐ, wǒ lái wǎn le.
"Sorry, I am late."

三. 语音练习 Pronunciation Drills

声母 Initials: z c s
韵母 Finals: -i [ɿ] er
iong ua uan uang ün

1. 拼音 Spelling

zā	cā	sā
zī	cī	sī
zū	cū	sū

zuān	cuān	suān
zuī	cuī	suī
zūn	cūn	sūn
zhuāng	chuāng	shuāng
jiōng	qiōng	xiōng
jūn	qūn	xūn
guā	kuā	huā

2. 四声 The four tones

zāi		zǎi	zài	zài
cān	cán	cǎn	càn	
tīng	tíng	tǐng	tìng	cāntīng
sī		sǐ	sì	
cēng	céng		cèng	sì céng
	ér	ěr	èr	èr hào
wēn	wén	wěn	wèn	qǐngwèn
xiē	xié	xiě	xiè	xièxie
jiān		jiǎn	jiàn	zàijiàn
wān	wán	wǎn	wàn	lái wǎn le
yōng	yóng	yǒng	yòng	búyòng
wāng	wáng	wǎng	wàng	
yūn	yún	yǔn	yùn	Wáng Xiǎoyún
sōng	sóng	sǒng	sòng	
huā	huá		huà	Sòng Huá

3. 辨音 Sound discrimination

zǐ —— cǐ (son)　　qiě —— jiě (and)　　jiàn —— qiàn (to see)

qīng —— jīng (blue-green)　　kuài —— kuà (quick)　　huān —— huāng

4. 辨调 Tone discrimination

sì —— sī (four)　　jǐng —— qǐng (well)　　èr —— ér (two) (son)

yǒng —— yòng　　wén —— wèn (written language)　　xióng —— xiōng (bear)

5. 韵母er和儿化韵 Final "er" and retroflex ending

èr (two)	zhèr (here)
érzi (son)	nàr (there)
ěrduo (ear)	nǎr (where)
nǚ'ér (daughter)	wánr (to play)

6. 声调组合 Combination of tones

"-"+"-"	"-"+"ˊ"	"-"+"ˇ"	"-"+"ˋ"	"-"+"°"
cāntīng	Yīngguó	jīnglǐ	gāoxìng	xiānsheng
fēijī (plane)	shēngcí (new word)	qiānbǐ (pencil)	gōngzuò (work)	xiūxi (rest)
kāichē (to drive a car)	huānyíng (to welcome)	kāishǐ (to start)	shāngdiàn (shop)	qīzi (wife)

"ˊ"+"-"	"ˊ"+"ˊ"	"ˊ"+"ˇ"	"ˊ"+"ˋ"	"ˊ"+"°"
míngtiān (tomorrow)	xuéxí	yóuyǒng (to swim)	xuéyuàn	shénme
shíjiān (time)	huídá (answer)	píjiǔ (beer)	zázhì (magazine)	míngzi (name)
zuótiān (yesterday)	zúqiú (football)	cídiǎn (dictionary)	cídài (audio tape)	háizi (child)

7. 双音节连读 Practice on disyllabic words

jiàoshì (classroom)	Hélán (The Netherlands)
lǐtáng (auditorium)	Āijí (Egypt)
cāochǎng (playground)	Yuènán (Vietnam)
cèsuǒ (toilet)	Tàiguó (Thailand)
yīyuàn (hospital)	Yìndù (India)

8. 多音节连读 Practice on polysyllabic words

túshūguǎn (library)	Xīnjiāpō (Singapore)
shíyànshì	Fēilǜbīn (the Philiphines)
bàngōngshì	Xīnxīlán (New Zealand)
tǐyùguǎn	Àodàlìyà (Australia)
wàishìchù	Mǎláixīyà (Malaysia)
tíngchēchǎng	Yìndùníxīyà (Indonesia)

9. 朗读下列课堂用语 Read the following classroom expressions aloud

Qǐng niàn kèwén. (Please read the text.)

Qǐng niàn shēngcí. (Please read the new words.)

Wǒ shuō, nǐmen tīng. (Listen to me.)

四. 会话练习 Conversation Practice

KEY SENTENCES

1. Qǐng jìn, qǐng zuò.
2. Wǒ bù zhīdao.
3. Zàijiàn.
4. Qǐngwèn, cāntīng zài nǎr?
5. Xièxie.
6. Búyòng xiè.
7. Duìbuqǐ.
8. Méi guānxi.

(一)【问地点 Asking for directions】

1. 完成下列会话 Complete the following dialogues

(1) A: Qǐngwèn, cèsuǒ zài nǎr?

B: ________________.

A: Xièxie.

B: ________________.

(2) A: Qǐngwèn, jiàoshì zài nǎr?

B: Duìbuqǐ, ________________.

2. 情景会话 Situational dialogues

In an unfamiliar building:

(1) You are looking for the elevator (电梯, diàntī).

(2) You are looking for Mr. Yang's office.

(二)【找人 Looking for someone】

1. 完成下列会话 Complete the following dialogues

(1) A: Qǐngwèn, Lín Nà zài ma?

B: ________________.

A: Tā zài nǎr?

B: Duìbuqǐ, ________________.

A: Méi guānxi. Zàijiàn!

B: ________________.

(2) A: ________________?

B: Zài. Qǐng jìn.

2. 看图会话 Make a dialogue based on the picture

(1) Xuésheng: ________________?

Yáng lǎoshī: ________________.

(2) Lín Nà: Lìbō zài ma ?

Mǎ Dàwéi: ________________.

Lín Nà: ________________?

Mǎ Dàwéi: ________________.

Lín Nà: ________________.

Mǎ Dàwéi: ________________.

（三）【道歉 Making an apology】

看图会话 Make a dialogue based on the picture

(1) A: ________________

B: ________________

(2) A: ________________

B: ________________

（四）【问职业 Asking about someone's occupation】

1. 完成下列会话 Complete the following dialogues

(1) A: Nín shì yīshēng ma?

B: Bú shì, ____________, wǒ shì____________.

A: Nín ne?

C: Wǒ yě shì xuésheng, wǒ xuéxí Hànyǔ.

(2) A: ________________?

B: Shì, tā shì wàiyǔ lǎoshī.

A: Nǐ ________________?

B: Wǒ bú shì wàiyǔ lǎoshī. Wǒ shì ____________.

（五）听述 Listen and repeat

请问，他的宿舍在哪儿？

在三层三一〇号。

谢谢。

*　*　*

请问，您认识陈老师吗？

对不起，我不认识。

没关系。再见。

再见。

五. 语音 Phonetics

1. 儿化韵 Retroflex ending (final)

The final "er" sometimes does not form a syllable by itself but is attached to another final to form a retroflex final. A retroflex final is represented by the letter "r" added to the final. In actual writing, "儿" is added to the character in question, as in "nǎr(哪儿)".

2. 发音要领 Pronunciation key

Initials:	z	like "ds" in "beds"
	c	like "ts" in "cats", with aspiration
	s	pronounced as in English, e.g. "s" in "see"
Finals:	-r (final)	like "er" in "sister" (American pronunciation)

六. 语法 Grammar

用疑问代词的问句 Questions with an interrogative pronoun

Statement		Question
Nà shì wǒmen lǎoshī.	→	Nà shì shéi?
那 是 我们 老师。		那 是 谁？
Wǒ xìng Mǎ.	→	Nǐ xìng shénme?
我 姓 马。		你 姓 什么？
Cāntīng zài èr céng.	→	Cāntīng zài nǎr?
餐厅 在 二 层。		餐厅 在 哪儿？
Tā shì Zhōngguó rén.	→	Tā shì nǎ guó rén?
她 是 中国 人。		她 是 哪 国 人？

The word order in a question with an interrogative pronoun is the same as that in a declarative sentence. In this kind of sentence, a question pronoun simply replaces the part of the sentence to which the interrogative pronoun corresponds.

七. 汉字 Chinese Characters

1.汉字复合笔画(1) Combined character strokes (1)

Stroke	Name	Example	Way to Write
㇖	hénggōu	你	The horizontal stroke with a hook, is written like the fourth stroke in "你".
㇕	héngzhé	马	The horizontal stroke with a downward turn, is written like the first stroke in "马".
㇇	héngpiě	又	The horizontal stroke with a downward turn to the left, is written like the first stroke in "又".
㇆	héngzhégōu	门	The horizontal stroke with a downward turn and a hook, is written like the third stroke in "门".
㇊	héngzhétí	语	The horizontal stroke with a downward turn, and then an upward turn to the right, is written like the second stroke in "语".
亅	shùgōu	丁	The vertical stroke with a hook, is written like the second stroke in "丁".

2. 认写基本汉字 Learn and write basic Chinese characters

(1) 二 　一 二
èr　two　2 strokes

(2) 儿(兒)　丿 儿
ér　son　2 strokes

(3) 子　乛 了 子
zǐ　son　3 strokes

(4) 井　一 二 井 井
jǐng　well　4 strokes

(5) 文　丶 亠 ナ 文
wén　written language　4 strokes

(6) 见(見)　丨 冂 贝 见
jiàn　to see　4 strokes

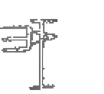


(7) 且　丨 冂 月 目 且
qiě　and　5 strokes

Note: "且" is the original character for "祖"(zǔ, ancestor). When it became a loaned function word, "祖" was substituted for the original character.

(8) 四　丨 冂 门 四 四
sì　four　5 strokes

(9) 我　丿 二 于 手 我 我 我
wǒ　I, me　7 strokes



(10) 青　一 二 ≠ 丰 丰 青 青 青
qīng　blue-green　8 strokes

3. 认写课文中已出现的汉字 Learn and write the Chinese characters appearing in the texts

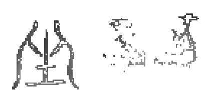
𠂇 (zàizìtóu) (the "location" top) 一 ナ 𠂇　3 strokes

(1) 在 zài

在 → 𠂇 + 土

(2) 坐 zuò

坐 → 人 + 人 + 土



(3) 请问 qǐngwèn (請問)

请 → 讠 + 青

(The meaning side is "讠", and the phonetic side is "青".)

问 → 门 + 口

辶 (zǒuzhīdǐ)(the "hurrying" side) 丶 ⺀ 辶 3 strokes

(4) 这 zhè (這)

这 → 文 + 辶

(5) 进 jìn (進)

进 → 井 + 辶

(6) 再见 zàijiàn (再見)

再 → 一 + 冂 + 土

(一 厂 万 再 再 再 6 strokes)

⺍ (xuézìtóu) (the "study" top) 丶 丷 ⺍ ⺍ ⺍ 5 strokes

(7) 学生 xuésheng (學生)

学 → ⺍ + 子

(8) 好 hǎo

好 → 女 + 子

(9) 小姐 xiǎojiě

姐 → 女 + 且

⺆ (yòngzìkuàng) (the "use" frame) 丿 ⺆ 2 strokes

(10) 不用 búyòng

用 → ⺆ + 丰

(一 二 丰)

文化知识 Cultural Notes

Chinese Dictionaries

Unlike most English dictionaries, in which entries are arranged alphabetically, Chinese dictionaries are organized in a number of different ways. Chinese dictionaries can be compiled alphabetically (using *pinyin* or another romanization system), by the number of strokes used to write the character in question, or by the radical of the character. Many dictionaries published before the 1920s order their entries according to radical, whereas modern dictionaries are often arranged alphabetically and include radical and stroke-number indexes.

The *Xinhua Zidian* (*New Chinese Dictionary*) and *Xiandai Hanyu Cidian* (*Modern Chinese Dictionary*) are among the most widely used dictionaries at present in the People's Republic of China. The first is a pocketsize dictionary, containing some eight thousand entries. It deals mainly with individual characters, their definitions, pronunciations, and tones. The second is a medium-sized dictionary including more than fifty-six thousand entries. It covers single characters, compound words, set phrases, and idiomatic expressions.

The encyclopedic *Cihai* (*Sea of Words*) and the detailed *Ciyuan* (*Sources of Words*) are both large dictionaries, often issued in multi-volume sets. Currently there are also many dictionaries specially designed for international students who want to study Chinese language and culture.

In this lesson, you will be able to learn what to do when you don't understand what another person has said. You will also learn how to make suggestions, how to accept or decline suggestions, and how to make comments. This lesson also provides a review of the pronunciation and tones covered so far.

第六课 Lesson 6 (复习 Review)

Wǒmen qù yóuyǒng, hǎo ma
我们 去 游泳，好 吗

一、课文 Text

【评论】Making comments

(一)

Wáng Xiǎoyún：Lín Nà, zuótiān de jīngjù zěnmeyàng? ①
王 小云： 林 娜， 昨天 的 京剧 怎么样？

Lín Nà： Hěn yǒu yìsi. Jīntiān tiānqì hěn hǎo, wǒmen qù yóuyǒng, hǎo ma? ②
林 娜： 很 有 意思。今天 天气 很 好， 我们 去 游泳， 好 吗？

【建议】Making suggestions

Wáng Xiǎoyún：Tài hǎo le! Shénme shíhou qù? ③
王 小云： 太 好 了！ 什么 时候 去？

Lín Nà： Xiànzài qù, kěyǐ ma? ④
林 娜： 现在 去， 可以 吗？

Wáng Xiǎoyún：Kěyǐ.
王 小云： 可以。



生词 New Words

1.	qù	V	去	to go
2.	yóuyǒng	VO	游泳	to swim
3.	zuótiān	N	昨天	yesterday
4.	jīngjù	N	京剧	Beijing opera
5.	zěnmeyàng	QPr	怎么样	how is it?
6.	yǒu yìsi	IE	有意思	interesting
7.	jīntiān	N	今天	today
	tiān	N	天	day
8.	tiānqì	N	天气	weather
9.	tài	Adv	太	too; extremely
*10.	shénme	QPr	什么	what
11.	shíhou	N	时候	time; moment
12.	xiànzài	N	现在	now



(二)

Dīng Lìbō： Yáng lǎoshī, míngtiān nín yǒu shíjiān ma? ⑤
丁 力波： 杨 老师， 明天 您 有 时间 吗？

Yáng lǎoshī：Duìbuqǐ, qǐng zài shuō yí biàn. ⑥
杨 老师： 对不起，请 再 说 一 遍。

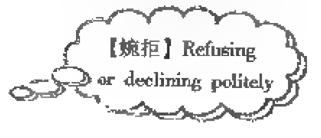
【请求重复】Asking someone to repeat something

Dīng Lìbō： Míngtiān nín yǒu shíjiān ma?
丁 力波： 明天 您 有 时间 吗？

Wǒmen qù dǎ qiú, hǎo ma?
我们 去 打 球， 好 吗？



Yáng lǎoshī：Hěn bàoqiàn, míngtiān wǒ hěn máng, kǒngpà bù xíng. ⑦
杨 老师： 很 抱歉， 明天 我 很 忙， 恐怕 不 行。



Xièxie nǐmen.
谢谢 你们。

生词 New Words

1. míngtiān	N	明天	tomorrow
2. yǒu	V	有	to have
3. shíjiān	N	时间	time
4. shuō	V	说	to say; to speak
5. biàn	■	遍	number of times (of action)
6. dǎ qiú	V O	打球	to play ball
dǎ	V	打	to play
qiú	N	球	ball
7. bàoqiàn	V/A	抱歉	to feel sorry/sorry
*8. máng	A	忙	busy
9. kǒngpà	Adv	恐怕	to be afraid that; perhaps
10. xíng	V	行	to be O.K.
*11. xièxie	V	谢谢	to thank
12. nǐmen	Pr	你们	you (pl.)

二. 注释 Notes

① Zuótiān de jīngjù zěnmeyàng?

"How was yesterday's Beijing opera?"

"… zěnmeyàng?" is an expression commonly used to ask for someone's opinion.

Among the roughly 300 forms of opera in China, Beijing opera has enjoyed the greatest popularity and has the most extensive influence. As a unique art form representative of Chinese culture, it is loved by many people all over the world.

② Wǒmen qù yóuyǒng, hǎo ma?

"Shall we go swimming?"

"…, hǎo ma?" is a pattern used when making a suggestion.

③ Tài hǎo le! Shénme shíhou qù?

"That's great! When are we going?"

"Tài hǎo le! (太好了!)" is an expression used to show enthusiastic approval. It is also used to express happy agreement with a suggestion. You may also use "hǎo(好)" or "xíng(行)" as a response.

④ Xiànzài qù, kěyǐ ma?

"Is it O.K. to go right now?"

"…, kěyǐ ma?" is another expression used to make a suggestion. If you agree with a suggestion, you may say "kěyǐ(可以)" or "hǎo(好)".

⑤ Míngtiān nín yǒu shíjiān ma?

"Do you have time tomorrow?"

⑥ Qǐng zài shuō yí biàn.

"Pardon? Would you say it again?"

This phrase is used when the speaker's words were not heard clearly and you would like him/her to repeat them.

⑦ Hěn bàoqiàn, míngtiān wǒ hěn máng, kǒngpà bù xíng.

"I'm sorry, but I'll be very busy tomorrow. I'm afraid I can't."

"kǒngpà bù xíng" is a phrase to express a courteous refusal.

三. 语音复习 Pronunciation Review

1. 拼音 Spelling

zhī	chī	zī	cī
jū	qū	gū	kū
bēn	pēng	tān	dāng
zhōng	chōng	gān	kāng
zān	cāng	jīn	qīng
zhā	chā	zū	cū
gē	kē	jī	qī

2. 四声 The four tones

yōu	yóu	yǒu	yòu	
yōng		yǒng	yòng	yóuyǒng
zuō	zuó	zuǒ	zuò	
tiān	tián	tiǎn	tiàn	zuótiān
jīn		jǐn	jìn	jīntiān
	míng	mǐng	mìng	míngtiān
qī	qí	qǐ	qì	tiānqì
xiān	xián	xiǎn	xiàn	xiànzài
jīng		jǐng	jìng	
jū	jú	jǔ	jù	jīngjù
bāo	báo	bǎo	bào	
qiān	qián	qiǎn	qiàn	bàoqiàn
kōng		kǒng	kòng	kǒngpà
xīng	xíng	xǐng	xìng	bù xíng

3. 辨音 Sound discrimination

jiǔ —— xiǔ (nine)	sī —— shī (private)	cùn —— zùn (inch)
qì —— jì (air)	duì —— tuì (to exchange)	guǎn —— juǎn

4. 辨调 Tone discrimination

wáng —— wàng (to die)	kàn —— kǎn (to see)	gōng —— gòng (labor)
sān —— sǎn (three)	shēn —— shèn (body)	guāi —— guǎi

5. 声调组合 Combination of tones

"ˇ"+"ˉ"	"ˇ"+"ˊ"	"ˇ"+"ˇ"	"ˇ"+"ˋ"	"ˇ"+"·"
lǎoshī	yǔyán	kěyǐ	kǒngpà	jiějie
yǔyīn (pronunciation)	dǎ qiú	yǔfǎ (grammar)	qǐngwèn	zěnme (how)
xiǎoshuō (novel)	qǐchuáng (to get up)	fǔdǎo (coach)	nǚshì (Madam)	yǐzi (chair)

"ˋ"+"ˉ"	"ˋ"+"ˊ"	"ˋ"+"ˇ"	"ˋ"+"ˋ"	"ˋ"+"·"
shàngbān (to go to work)	sì céng	wàiyǔ	bàoqiàn	xièxie
qìchē (car)	kèwén (text)	diànyǐng (movie)	huìhuà (conversation)	mèimei
lùyīn (sound recording)	fùxí (review)	diànnǎo (computer)	Hànzì (Chinese character)	kèqi

6. 双音节连读 Practice on disyllabic words

duànliàn (to do physical training)
chīfàn (to eat a meal)
shàngkè (to have lessons)
xiàkè (class is over)
chànggē (to sing a song)
tiàowǔ (to dance)
xǐzǎo (to take a bath)
shuìjiào (to sleep)

7. 多音节连读 Practice on polysyllabic words

shuō Hànyǔ (to speak Chinese)
niàn shēngcí (to read the new words)
xiě Hànzì (to write Chinese characters)
tīng lùyīn (to listen to tape)
kàn lùxiàng (to watch video)
zuò liànxí (to do exercise)
fānyì jùzi (to translate sentence)
yòng diànnǎo (to use computer)

8. 朗读下面的唐诗 Read the following poem aloud

Dēng Guàn Què Lóu
登鹳雀楼
(Táng) Wáng Zhīhuàn
(唐) 王之涣

Bái rì yī shān jìn,
白日依山尽，
Huáng Hé rù hǎi liú.
黄河入海流。
Yù qióng qiān lǐ mù,
欲穷千里目，
Gèng shàng yì céng lóu.
更上一层楼。

9. 朗读下列课堂用语 Read the following classroom expressions aloud

Qǐng kàn shū. (Please look at your books.)
Qǐng xiě Hànzì. (Please write the characters.)
Qǐng zài niàn yí biàn. (Please read it again.)
Wǒmen tīngxiě. (Let's do dictation.)

四. 会话练习 Conversation Practice

KEY SENTENCES

1. Zuótiān de jīngjù zěnmeyàng?
2. Jīntiān tiānqì hěn hǎo, wǒmen qù yóuyǒng, hǎo ma?
3. Tài hǎo le! Shénme shíhou qù?
4. Xiànzài qù, kěyǐ ma?
5. Kěyǐ.
6. Míngtiān nín yǒu shíjiān ma?
7. Duìbuqǐ, qǐng zài shuō yí biàn.
8. Hěn bàoqiàn, kǒngpà bù xíng.

（一）【建议 Making suggestions】

看图会话 Make a dialogue based on the picture

(1) A: ______________, hǎo ma?

B: Tài hǎo le! ______________?

A: __________, kěyǐ ma?

B: ______________.

(2) A: ______________, hǎo ma?

B: Shénme shíhou qù?

A: __________, kěyǐ ma?

B: Duìbuqǐ, __________, __________.

A: Méi guānxi.

(Use the word "tiàowǔ" which means "to dance".)

（二）【请求重复 Asking someone to repeat something】

看图会话 Make a dialogue based on the picture

A: ______________________________?

B: Duìbuqǐ, ______________________.

A: ______________________________?

（三）【评论 Making comments】

看图会话 Make a dialogue based on the picture

(1) A: Qǐngwèn, zhè shì shénme?

B: Zhè shì wǔshù. Wǔshù zěnmeyàng?

A: ______________.

(2) A: Zhè shì shénme?

B: Zhè shì xióngmāo.

A: Xióngmāo zěnmeyàng?

B: ______________.

（四）模仿下面的会话进行练习 Imitate the following dialogues

(1) A: Nín hǎo!

B: Nín hǎo!

A: Qǐngwèn, nín guìxìng?

B: Wǒ xìng Lǐ, jiào Lǐ Mǎlì. Qǐngwèn, nín xìng shénme?

A: Wǒ xìng Sòng, jiào Sòng Huá. Nín shì nǎ guó rén?

B: Wǒ shì Měiguó rén, shì Běijīng Dàxué (university) de xuésheng.

A: Rènshi nín hěn gāoxìng.

B: Rènshi nín, wǒ yě hěn gāoxìng.

(2) A: Lìbō, nǐ hǎo ma?

B: Wǒ hěn hǎo. Sòng Huá, nǐ ne?

A: Wǒ hěn máng. Nǐ wàipó hǎo ma?

B: Xièxie, tā hěn hǎo. Nǐ bàba、māma dōu hǎo ma?

A: Tāmen dōu hěn hǎo. Mǎlì, zhè shì wǒ péngyou, Dīng Lìbō.

B: Nǐ hǎo.

A: Zhè shì Mǎlì.

C: Nǐ hǎo. Wǒ jiào Mǎlì, shì Běijīng Dàxué de xuésheng. Wǒ xuéxí Hànyǔ. Qǐngwèn, nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?

B: Bú shì, wǒ shì Jiānádà rén.

(3) A: Tā shì shéi?

B: Tā shì wǒmen lǎoshī.

A: Tā shì Zhōngguó rén ma?

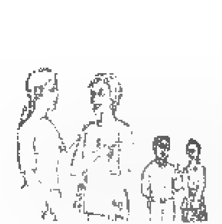
B: Tā shì Zhōngguó rén. Tā xìng Chén.

A: Nà shì shéi?

B: Tā jiào Lù Yǔpíng.

A: Tā yě shì lǎoshī ma?

B: Tā bú shì lǎoshī. Tā shì jìzhě.



(4) A: Xiānsheng, qǐngwèn, bàngōngshì zài nǎr?

B: Zài wǔ céng.

A: Chén lǎoshī zài ma?

B: Shéi? Duìbuqǐ, qǐng zài shuō yí biàn.

A: Chén Fāngfāng lǎoshī zài ma?

B: Tā zài.

A: Xièxie.

B: Bú xiè.





(5) A: Kěyǐ jìnlai ma?

B: Wáng xiānsheng, nín hǎo. Qǐng jìn, qǐng zuò.



A: Duìbuqǐ, wǒ lái wǎn le.

B: Méi guānxi. Nín yào kāfēi ma?

A: Wǒ bú yào. Xièxie. Míngtiān wǒmen qù kàn jīngjù, hǎo ma?

B: Duìbuqǐ, míngtiān wǒ hěn máng, kǒngpà bù xíng.



(五) 听述 Listen and repeat

我没听清楚,请再说一遍。

对不起,明天我没有时间,恐怕不行。

五. 语音 Phonetics

1. "一"的变调 Tone sandhi of "一"

Normally "一" is pronounced in the first tone when it stands by itself, at the end of a word, phrase or sentence, or is used as an ordinal number. However, "一" is pronounced in the fourth tone when it precedes a first tone, second tone, or third tone syllable. It is read in the second tone when it precedes a fourth tone.

yī + (ˉ / ˊ / ˇ) → yì + (ˉ / ˊ / ˇ) example: yì bēi (one cup), yì píng (one bottle), yì běn (one copy)

yī + ˋ → yí + ˋ example: yí biàn (one time/once)

2. 普通话声母韵母拼合总表 Table of Combinations of Initials and Finals in Common Speech

There are more than 400 meaningful syllables in the common speech of modern Chinese. If we add the four tones to these, we can distinguish more than 1,200 syllables. The syllables covered from Lesson 1 to Lesson 6 are shown in the table on the next page.

六. 语法 Grammar

动词谓语句 Sentences with a verbal predicate

The main part of the predicate in a sentence with a verbal predicate is a verb. The object usually follows the verb. One of its negative forms is made by placing the adverb "不" before the verb.

Subject	*Predicate*			
	Adv	V	O	吗? ma?
你 Nǐ		要 yào	咖啡 kāfēi	吗? ma?
我们 Wǒmen	都 dōu	学习 xuéxí	汉语。 Hànyǔ.	
餐厅 Cāntīng		在 zài	哪儿? nǎr?	
我 Wǒ	不 bù	知道。 zhīdao.		
我 Wǒ		姓 xìng	陆。 Lù.	
她 Tā		叫 jiào	林娜。 Lín Nà.	
您 Nín	明天 míngtiān	有 yǒu	时间 shíjiān	吗? ma?

七. 汉字 Chinese Characters

1. 汉字复合笔画(2) Combined character strokes (2)

Stroke	Name	Example	Way to Write
ㄴ	shùzhé	山	The vertical stroke with a horizontal turn to the right, is written like the second stroke in "山".
レ	shùtí	以	The vertical stroke with an upward turn to the right, is written like the first stroke in "以".
ㄣ	shùzhézhégōu	马	The vertical stroke with a horizontal turn to the right, and then a downward turn and a hook, is written like the second stroke in "马".
乙	héngzhéwān gōu	九	The horizontal stroke with a vertical turn, and then a horizontal turn to the right and an upward hook, is written like the second stroke in "九".
ㄥ	piězhé	么	The downward stroke to the left, and then a horizontal turn to the right, is written like the second stroke in "么".
〈	piědiǎn	女	The downward stroke to the left and then an extended dot to the right, is written like the first stroke in "女".

2. 笔画组合 Combination of strokes

The relationship between strokes in a Chinese character can be essential to its meaning. There are three ways to combine strokes in a character:

(1) Adjacent (not attached) like "八", "儿", "二", "小";

(2) Crossing like "十", "大", "九", "夫";

(3) Connecting like "厂", "丁", "人", "山", "天".

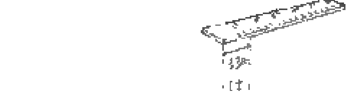
3. 认写基本汉字 Learn and write basic Chinese characters

(1) 九 丿 九
jiǔ nine 2 strokes



(2) 厶 ㄥ 厶
sī private 2 strokes

(3) 寸 一 十 寸
cùn a unit of inch 3 strokes

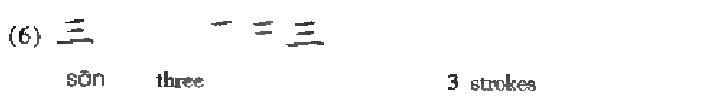


(4) 工 一 丅 工
gōng labour 3 strokes



(5) 亡 丶 亠 亡
wáng to die 3 strokes

(6) 三 一 二 三
sān three 3 strokes

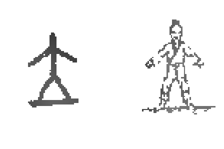




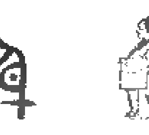
(7) 气(氣) 丿 𠂉 𠂊 气
qì air 4 strokes



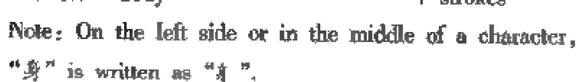
(8) 立 丶 亠 亠 亣 立
lì to stand 5 strokes



(9) 身 丿 亻 门 自 自 身 身
shēn body 7 strokes



Note: On the left side or in the middle of a character, "身" is written as "⺼".



10) 兑 丶 丷 丷 丷 丷 兑 兑
duì to exchange 7 strokes

4. 认写课文中的汉字 Learn and write the Chinese characters appearing in the texts

(1) 去 qù

去 → 土 + 厶

(2) 有意思 yǒu yìsi





有 → 𠂇 + 月

意 → 立 + 曰 + 心

思 → 田 + 心

(3) 天气 tiānqì (天氣)



天 → 一 + 大

(4) 太 tài

太 → 大 + 丶

(5) 什么 shénme (甚麽)

什 → 亻 + 十

么 → 丿 + 厶

(6) 时候 shíhou (時候)

时 → 日 + 寸

("日", the "sun" side denotes time.)

候 → 亻 + 丨 + ⺈ + 矢

(丿亻亻亻亻亻亻亻候候 10 strokes)

(7) 现在 xiànzài (現在)

现 → 王 + 见

(8) 明天 míngtiān

明 → 日 + 月

("日", the "sun" side and the "moon" side, "月", denote light.)

(9) 时间 shíjiān (時間)

间 → 门 + 日

(10) 说 shuō (說)

说 → 讠 + 兑

忄 (shùxīnpáng) 丶 丷 忄 3 strokes

(On the left side of a character, "心" is written as "忄".)

(11) 忙 máng

忙 → 忄 + 亡

(12) 谢谢 xièxie (謝謝)

谢 → 讠 + 身 + 寸

文化知识 Cultural Notes

Beijing Opera

Beijing opera is a branch of traditional Chinese musical drama. It took shape in Beijing about 150 years ago and has been popular ever since. Beijing opera is a theatrical art synthesizing recitation, instrumental music, singing, dancing, acrobatics, and martial arts, and featuring symbolic motions and stage design. The highly formulaic and suggestive movements of the actors are accompanied by the rhythmic beats of gongs and drums, or the haunting melodies of traditional instruments. All contribute to its uniqueness as a performing art. Beijing opera is rooted deeply in Chinese culture and still appeals strongly to many Chinese.

The first six lessons of this textbook provide an overview of the phonetic system of the Chinese language, which consists of twenty-one initials, thirty-eight finals, and the four basic tones. There are only a little over 1,200 ways of combining initials and finals in Chinese. Now that you can use *pinyin*, you should be able to read any Chinese syllable correctly.

A major goal of language learning is to acquire the ability to communicate in that language. For this purpose, you have learned how to respond to a number of basic social situations. In addition, you have met with more than one hundred words and expressions, have learned forty key sentences and have studied twenty-two sentences of classroom Chinese.

So far, you have acquired sixty basic Chinese characters as well as more than fifty new vocabulary items formed from them. You have also learned some rules of stroke order for Chinese characters. This elementary vocabulary will be useful when you start to learn compound words and continue to build your vocabulary.

From this lesson on, apart from continuing to work on improving your Chinese pronunciation, you will learn how to talk about everyday situations using a greater variety of Chinese expressions than before. You will experiment with a larger number of Chinese sentences, and will further explore the culture, customs, and habits of Chinese-speaking peoples.

This lesson will help you with making acquaintances, discussing your studies, and asking questions in a different way than you have previously learned.

第七课 Lesson 7

你 认识 不 认识 他
Nǐ rènshi bu rènshi tā

一、课文 Text





（一）

林 娜：力波，明天 开学，我 很 高兴。你 看，他 是 不 是 我们 学院 的 老师？
Lín Nà: Lìbō, míngtiān kāixué, wǒ hěn gāoxìng. Nǐ kàn, tā shì bu shì wǒmen xuéyuàn de lǎoshī?

丁 力波：我 问 一下。[1] 请问，您 是 我们 学院 的 老师 吗？[2]
Dīng Lìbō: Wǒ wèn yíxià. Qǐngwèn, nín shì wǒmen xuéyuàn de lǎoshī ma?

张　　教授：是，我是语言学院的老师。
Zhāng jiàoshòu：Shì，wǒ shì Yǔyán Xuéyuàn de lǎoshī.

丁力波：您贵姓？
Dīng Lìbō：Nín guìxìng?

【初次见面】Meeting someone for the first time

张　　教授：我姓张，我们认识一下，这是我的名片。
Zhāng jiàoshòu：Wǒ xìng Zhāng，wǒmen rènshi yíxià，zhè shì wǒ de míngpiàn.

丁力波：谢谢。（看名片）啊，您是张教授。[3]
Dīng Lìbō：Xièxie.（Kàn míngpiàn）À，nín shì Zhāng jiàoshòu.
我叫丁力波，她叫林娜。我们都是语言学院的学生。
Wǒ jiào Dīng Lìbō，tā jiào Lín Nà. Wǒmen dōu shì Yǔyán Xuéyuàn de xuésheng.

林娜：您是语言学院的教授，认识您，我们很高兴。
Lín Nà：Nín shì Yǔyán Xuéyuàn de jiàoshòu，rènshi nín，wǒmen hěn gāoxìng.

张　　教授：认识你们，我也很高兴。你们都好吗？
Zhāng jiàoshòu：Rènshi nǐmen，wǒ yě hěn gāoxìng. Nǐmen dōu hǎo ma?

林娜：谢谢，我们都很好。张教授，您忙不忙？
Lín Nà：Xièxie，wǒmen dōu hěn hǎo. Zhāng jiàoshòu，nín máng bu máng?

张　　教授：我很忙。好，你们请坐，再见！
Zhāng jiàoshòu：Wǒ hěn máng. Hǎo，nǐmen qǐng zuò，zàijiàn!

丁力波：
Dīng Lìbō:
林娜：
Lín Nà：
再见！
Zàijiàn!

语言学院经济系

张介元
教授

语言学院26楼301号　　电话：12345678

生词 New Words

1.	开学	VO	kāixué	to start school
	开	V	kāi	to open，to start
*2.	很	Adv	hěn	very　很好，很忙，很有意思
*3.	高兴	A	gāoxìng	happy，pleased　很高兴
	高	A	gāo	high，tall
4.	看	V	kàn	to watch，to look at　看老师，看这儿
5.	问	V	wèn	to ask　问老师，问朋友
6.	一下		yíxià	(used after a verb to indicate a short，quick，random，informal action) 介绍一下，认识一下，问一下，看一下
*7.	学院	N	xuéyuàn	institute　语言学院，汉语学院
8.	名片	N	míngpiàn	calling card　我的名片，老师的名片
9.	啊	Int	à	ah，oh
10.	教授	N	jiàoshòu	professor
	教	V	jiāo	to teach
*11.	丁力波	PN	Dīng Lìbō	(name of a Canadian student)
12.	张	PN	Zhāng	(a surname)

（二）

丁力波：林娜，那是谁？
Dīng Lìbō：Lín Nà，nà shì shéi?

林娜：那是马大为。你认识不认识他？
Lín Nà：Nà shì Mǎ Dàwéi. Nǐ rènshi bu rènshi tā?

丁力波：我不认识他。
Dīng Lìbō：Wǒ bú rènshi tā.

林娜：我来介绍一下。你好，大为，这是我朋友——
Lín Nà：Wǒ lái jièshào yíxià. Nǐ hǎo，Dàwéi，zhè shì wǒ péngyou—

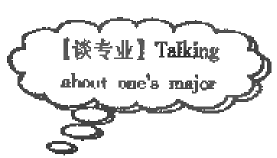
丁力波：你好！我姓丁，叫丁力波。请问，你叫
Dīng Lìbō：Nǐ hǎo! Wǒ xìng Dīng，jiào Dīng Lìbō. Qǐngwèn，nǐ jiào

什么　　名字？④
shénme míngzi?

马大为：我的中文名字叫马大为。⑤你是不是中国人？
Mǎ Dàwéi: Wǒ de Zhōngwén míngzi jiào Mǎ Dàwéi. Nǐ shì bu shì Zhōngguó rén?

丁力波：我是加拿大人。我妈妈是中国人，我爸爸是加拿大人。你也是加拿大人吗？
Dīng Lìbō: Wǒ shì Jiānádà rén. Wǒ māma shì Zhōngguó rén, wǒ bàba shì Jiānádà rén. Nǐ yě shì Jiānádà rén ma?

马大为：不是，我不是加拿大人，我是美国人。你学习什么专业？
Mǎ Dàwéi: Bú shì, wǒ bú shì Jiānádà rén, wǒ shì Měiguó rén. Nǐ xuéxí shénme zhuānyè?



丁力波：我学习美术专业。你呢？
Dīng Lìbō: Wǒ xuéxí měishù zhuānyè. Nǐ ne?

马大为：我学习文学专业。现在我学习汉语。
Mǎ Dàwéi: Wǒ xuéxí wénxué zhuānyè. Xiànzài wǒ xuéxí Hànyǔ.

林　娜：现在我们都学习汉语，也都是汉语系的学生。
Lín Nà: Xiànzài wǒmen dōu xuéxí Hànyǔ, yě dōu shì Hànyǔ xì de xuésheng.

生词 New Words

*1. 谁	QPr	shéi	who	
*2. 来	V	lái	to come	
3. 介绍	V	jièshào	to introduce	介绍林娜，介绍语言学院
4. 名字	N	míngzi	name	你的名字，叫什么名字
5. 中文	N	Zhōngwén	Chinese	中文名字，中文名片
*6. 爸爸	N	bàba	dad	

*7. 学习	V	xuéxí	to learn, to study	学习中文，学习汉语
学	V	xué	to learn, to study	学中文，学汉语，学语言
8. 专业	N	zhuānyè	major; specialty	中文专业，汉语专业，语言专业
9. 美术	N	měishù	fine arts	学习美术，美术专业
美	A	měi	beautiful	
10. 文学	N	wénxué	literature	中国文学，文学专业
11. 系	N	xì	faculty; department	汉语系，语言系，中文系
*12. 马大为	PN	Mǎ Dàwéi	(name of an American student)	
*13. 加拿大	PN	Jiānádà	Canada	
14. 美国	PN	Měiguó	the United States	

补充生词 Supplementary Words

1. 文化	N	wénhuà	culture
2. 历史	N	lìshǐ	history
3. 哲学	N	zhéxué	philosophy
4. 音乐	N	yīnyuè	music
5. 经济	N	jīngjì	economy
6. 数学	N	shùxué	mathematics
7. 物理	N	wùlǐ	physics
8. 化学	N	huàxué	chemistry
9. 教育	[illegible]	jiàoyù	education
10. 选修	V	xuǎnxiū	to take an elective course

二、注释 Notes

① 我问一下。

"一下" is used after a verb to indicate that an action is of short duration, or express the idea "giving something a try". It can soften the tone of an expression so that it sounds less formal. For example: "认识一下", "介绍一下", "去一下", "进来一下", "说一下", "坐一下".

"我来介绍一下" and "我们认识一下" are expressions commonly used when people meet each other for the first time.

② 您是我们学院的老师吗？

To indicate the place or organization where one works, plural pronouns are often used as modifiers. For example, the following phrases are used: "他们学院", "你们系", "我们国家(guójiā, country)", rather than "他学院", "你系", "我国家".

③ 啊，您是张教授。

"啊" is read in the fourth tone, indicating a sudden understanding or expressing admiration.

④ 你叫什么名字？

This is a casual way of asking someone's name, applicable to an adult talking with a child, or used among youngsters. The answer is usually one's full name. For example: "我叫丁力波". You may also answer by giving your surname first, and then your full name. For example: "我姓丁，叫丁力波".

⑤ 我的中文名字叫马大为。

A noun can be placed directly before a noun as its attributive modifier. For example: "中文名字", "汉语老师", "中国人".

To render a non-Chinese name into Chinese, we may choose two or three characters based on the pronunciation or meaning of the original name. David March, for example, may be rendered into Chinese as "马大为", and Natalie Lynn as "林娜"; the surname "White" can be translated as "白", and a girl by the name of Amy can be called "爱美".

Both "中文" and "汉语" refer to the Chinese language. "中文" has a broader meaning, referring to the Chinese language in both its written and spoken forms. Originally, "汉语" referred only to the spoken language of the Han people. Today, it is often used to refer to both the written and spoken forms of the Han language. These words are now used interchangeably by most people.

三、练习与运用 Drills and Practice

KEY SENTENCES

1. 他是不是我们学院的老师？
2. 你认识不认识他？
3. 我们认识一下，我的中文名字叫马大为。
4. 你学习什么专业？
5. 我学习美术专业。你呢？
6. 现在我们都学习汉语，也都是汉语系的学生。

1. 熟读下列词组 Master the following phrases

(1) 看一下　说一下　介绍一下　认识一下　学习一下

(2) 认识不认识　介绍不介绍　学习不学习
是不是　看不看　问不问　要不要　在不在　去不去　说不说

(3) 我爸爸　你妈妈　我朋友　她男朋友　我们老师　你们学院

(4) 我的名片　他的名字　我们学院的老师　语言学院的学生　中文系的教授

(5) 中国人　加拿大人　美国人　中国老师　加拿大朋友　美国学生
男朋友　女朋友　男老师　女老师　男(学)生　女(学)生
男人　女人

2. 句型替换 Pattern drills

(1) A: 那是谁？
B: 那是我朋友。
A: 他/她姓什么？
B: 他/她姓马。

她男朋友	张
加拿大学生	丁
美国小姐	林

(2) A: 谁是马小姐？
B: 他/她是马小姐。
A: 马小姐叫什么名字？
B: 马小姐叫马玉文。

田医生	田大中
张老师	张青生
Mr. White	白可贝

(3) A: 他/她是你们老师吗？
B: 他/她不是我们老师，他/她是我朋友。
A: 他/她叫什么名字？
B: 他/她叫________________。

你妈妈	我们老师
中文老师	美术老师
张教授	马老师

(4) A: 你是不是中国人？
B: 不是，我是加拿大人。
A: 他也是加拿大人吗？
B: 是，他也是加拿大人。

老师	学生
美国学生	中国学生
中文系的学生	美术系的学生

(5) A: 这是不是你的照片？
B: 这不是我的照片。
A: 这是谁的照片？
B: 这是她的照片。

丁力波	马大为
张教授	田医生
你们老师	他们老师

(6) A: 你认识不认识马大为?
B: 我认识马大为。
A: 他/她是哪国人?
B: 他/她是______________。

林小姐
田医生
白教授

(7) A: 他不是汉语系的学生,她呢?
B: 她也不是汉语系的学生。
A: 谁是汉语系的学生?
B: 张小姐是汉语系的学生。

是语言学院的教授
忙
学习语言

(8) A: 你的专业是不是汉语?
B: 不是。
A: 你学习什么专业?
B: 我学习美术专业,你呢?
A: 我学习文学专业。

美术	历史(lìshǐ)
语言	哲学(zhéxué)
音乐(yīnyuè)	经济(jīngjì)

3. 看图造句 Make sentences according to the pictures

(1)

他是学生,她也是学生。
他们都是学生。

他是老师,她______老师。
他们______老师。

他不是美国人,她______美国人。
他们______美国人。

他们是中国人,她______中国人。
他们______中国人。

(2)

今天天气好不好?
今天天气很好。

他______?
他很忙。

他______?
他不高兴。

4. 会话练习 Conversation practice

【初次见面 Meeting someone for the first time】

(1) A: 请问,您贵姓?
B: 我姓______,叫______。您呢?
A: 我叫______________。这是我的名片。
B: 谢谢。

(2) A: 我们认识一下。我叫______________。你叫什么名字?
B: 我叫David March。我的中文名字叫马大为。

(3) A: 请问,您是哪国人?
B: 我是______________。你呢?
A: 我是______________。

(4) A: 请问,您是不是中国人?
B: 我不是______________,我是______________。

(5) A: 我介绍一下,这是______,他是______国人,是______。
这是______,她是______国人,是______。
B: 认识你很高兴。
C: ______________。

(6) 你们好!我姓丁,叫丁力波,是加拿大人。我的专业是美术。现在我学习汉语,是语言学院汉语系的学生。认识你们,我很高兴。

【谈专业 Talking about one's major】

(1) A: 请问,你是不是汉语系的学生?
B: 我是汉语系的学生。
A: 你学习什么专业?
B: 我学习历史(lìshǐ)专业。你的专业是什么?
A: 我的专业是______________。

(2) A：你们明天开学吗？

B：我们明天开学。

A：你的专业是不是汉语？

B：不是，我的专业是美术。

A：你选修(xuǎnxiū)什么？

B：我选修中国文化(wénhuà)。

5. 交际练习 Communication exercises

(1) You come across a student whom you don't know. How do you carry out a conversation with him/her in order to know more about him/her?

(2) Two of your friends do not know each other. How do you introduce them to each other?

(3) How do you introduce yourself in a meeting?

(4) How do you ask about your new friend's major?

学生登记表 Student's Registration Form

姓名 name	性别 sex	年龄 age	国籍 nationality	单位 institution
丁力波	男	21	加拿大	语言学院汉语系
林娜	女	19	英国	语言学院汉语系
马大为	男	22	美国	语言学院汉语系

四. 阅读和复述 Reading Comprehension and Paraphrasing

他们是不是学生？是，他们都是语言学院的学生。你不认识他们，我介绍一下。他们都有中国姓，有中文名字。这是林娜，她是英国(Yīngguó)人。他是美国人，他姓马，他的中文名字很有意思，叫大为。他叫丁力波，爸爸是加拿大人，妈妈是中国人，他是加拿大人。马大为的专业是文学，丁力波的专业是美术。现在他们都学习汉语。

那是语言学院的汉语老师：女老师姓陈，男老师姓杨(Yáng)。他们都是汉语系的老师，也都是中国人。张教授也是语言学院的老师，他很忙。你看，这是张教授的名片。

田小姐不是老师，她是语言学院的医生。

五. 语法 Grammar

1. 表领属关系的定语 Attributives expressing possession

In Chinese, an attributive must be placed before the word it modifies. When a noun or a pronoun is used as an attributive to express possession, the structural particle "的" is usually required.

NP / Pr +	的 +	N
我	的	名片
哥哥	的	咖啡
语言学院	的	老师

When a personal pronoun functions as an attributive and the modified word is a noun referring to a relative or the name of a work unit, the "的" between the attributive and the word it modifies may be omitted. For example: "我妈妈", "你爸爸", "他们家", "我们学院".

2. 正反疑问句 V/A-not-V/A questions

A question can also be formed by juxtaposing the affirmative and negative forms of the main element of the predicate (verb or adjective) in a sentence.

V/A + 不 V/A + O

Subject	*Predicate*		
	V/A	Not V/A	O
你	忙	不 忙？	
你们	认识	不 认识	他？
力波	是	不 是	中国人？

The response to such a question may be a complete sentence (affirmative or negative) or a sentence with its subject or object omitted. One may respond with "是" (affirmative answer) or "不是" (negative answer) at the beginning of an answer to a "是不是" question. For example:

(1) (我)忙。	(我)不忙。
(2) (我们)认识(他)。	(我们)不认识(他)。
(3) (力波)是中国人。	(力波)不是中国人。
是，力波是中国人。	不是，力波不是中国人。

3. 用"呢"构成的省略式问句 Abbreviated questions with "呢"

An abbreviated question with "呢" is made by adding "呢" directly after a pronoun or a noun. The meaning of the question, however, must be clearly indicated in the previous sentence.

Pr/NP + 呢？

我很好，你呢？　　　（你呢？　　= 你好吗？）
你不忙，你男朋友呢？　（你男朋友呢？= 你男朋友忙吗？）
你是加拿大人，他呢？　（他呢？　　= 他是加拿大人吗？）
林娜学习汉语，马大为呢？（马大为呢？ = 马大为学习汉语吗？）

4. "也"和"都"的位置 The position of adverbs "也" and "都"

The adverbs "也" and "都" must occur after the subject and before the predicative verb or adjective. For example："林娜也是加拿大人"，"他们都是加拿大人". One cannot say "也林娜是加拿大人"，"都他们是加拿大人".

If both "也" and "都" modify the predicate，"也" must be put before "都".

也/都 + V/A

Subject	*Predicate*	
	Adv	V/A
丁力波		是　加拿大人。
丁力波		认识　他。
丁力波	很	忙。
林娜	也	是　加拿大人。
林娜	也	认识　他。
林娜	也很	忙。
他们	都	是　加拿大人。
他们	都	认识　他。
他们	都很	忙。
我们	也都	是　加拿大人。
我们	也都	认识　他。
我们	也都很	忙。

In a negative sentence，"也" must occur before "不". "都" may be put before or after "不"，but the meanings of "都 不" and "不 都" are different.

也/都 + 不 + V/A

Subject	*Predicate*	
	Adv	V/A
她	不	是老师。
你	也不	是老师。
我们	都不	是老师。(none of us)
我们	不都	是老师。(not all of us)

六、汉字 Chinese Characters

1. 汉字的部件 Chinese character components

There are three aspects to the structure of a Chinese character：the strokes，the components and the whole character. For example，the character "木" consists of four strokes："一"，"丨"，"丿"，"㇏". It is a basic character and is also used as a component for some other characters. For example，"林" consists of two "木" characters. The components are the core structure of a Chinese character. Chinese characters can be divided into character-parts and non-character-parts. For example，"院" can be divided into the following three parts："阝"，"宀"，"元" of which "元" is a character-part，while "阝" and "宀" are the non-character-parts. The key to learning Chinese characters well is to master their components.

2. 认写基本汉字 Learn and write basic Chinese characters

(1) 开(開)　一 二 于 开
kāi　to open　4 strokes
("开" looks like the bar or the bolt of a door；when the "二" in "开" is removed，the door opens.)

(2) 目　丨 冂 冃 月 目
mù　eye　5 strokes



(3) 下　一 丅 下
xià　below，bottom　3 strokes
(in contrast with "上"，the "卜" under "一" denotes "bottom" or "beneath")

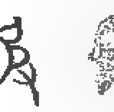


(4) 元　一 二 テ 元
yuán　first；primary　4 strokes

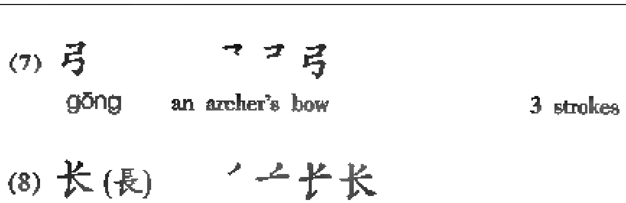


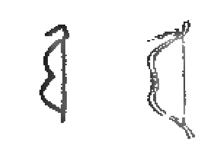

(5) 片　丿 丿' 片 片
piàn　a flat，thin piece；slice　4 strokes

(6) 皮　乛 厂 广 皮 皮
pí　skin　5 strokes




(7) 弓 ㇕ ㇕ 弓
gōng an archer's bow 3 strokes



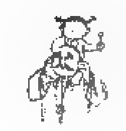


(8) 长(長) ノ 一 七 长
zhǎng to grow 4 strokes

(9) 来(來) 一 一 ㇒ 立 平 来 来
lái to come 7 strokes

(10) 介 ノ 人 介 介
jiè be situated between; interpose 4 strokes

(11) 父 ノ 八 少 父
fù father 4 strokes



(12) 巴 ㇕ ㇕ ㇕ 巴
bā wait anxiously; cling to 4 strokes
("巴" stands on the right side or at the bottom of a Chinese character, and denotes the pronunciation of the character.)

(13) 习(習) ㇆ 刁 习
xí to study 3 strokes

(14) 专(專) 一 二 专 专
zhuān special 4 strokes
(Note that the third stroke of "专" is one stroke, not two strokes.)

(15) 业(業) 丨 丨丨 丨丨丨 业 业
yè line of business; trade 5 strokes

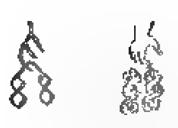
(16) 羊 丶 丷 䒑 兰 兰 羊
yáng sheep 6 strokes



(17) 术(術) 一 十 才 木 术
shù art; skill 5 strokes
(Note that "术" has one more dot than "木".)

(18) 系

xì department; system 7 strokes



(19) 为(爲) 丶 ソ 为 为
wéi act; to do 4 strokes

3. 认写课文中的汉字 Learn and write the Chinese characters appearing in the texts

彳 (shuānglìrén) ("亻" is called the "single-standing-person" side; "彳" is called the "double-standing-person" side.) ノ 彡 彳 3 strokes

艮 gèn ㇕ ㇕ ㇕ 艮 艮 艮 6 strokes

(1) 很 hěn

很 → 彳 + 艮 9 strokes

亠 (liùzìtóu) (the "six" top) 丶 亠 2 strokes

⺍ (xìngzìtóu) (the "excitement" top) 丶 丷 ⺍ ⺍ 4 strokes

(2) 高兴 gāoxìng (高興)

高 → 亠 + 口 + 冂 + 口 10 strokes

兴 → ⺍ + 八 6 strokes

手 (kànzìtóu) (In a multi-component character the vertical stroke with a hook "亅" in "手" is written as a downward stroke to the left "丿".) 一 二 三 手 4 strokes

(3) 看 kàn

看 → 手 + 目 9 strokes

(Holding a hand "手" above one's eyes "目" to gaze.)

阝 (zuǒěrduo) (the "left-ear" side) ㇋ 阝 2 strokes

(4) 学院 xuéyuàn (學院)

院 → 阝 + 宀 + 元 9 strokes

(5) 名片 míngpiàn

名 → 夕 + 口　　6 strokes

(6) 啊 à

啊 → 口 + 阝 + 可　　10 strokes

子 (zìzìpáng) (the "son" side) (The horizontal stroke in the character "子" is written as an upward stroke, when the character becomes the left side component of another character.)　　⺂ 了 子　　3 strokes

攵 (fǎnwénpáng) (the "tapping" side) (The dot in "文" is written as "丿", a downward stroke to the left, when the character becomes the right side component of another character)　　丿 𠂉 ⺁ 攵　　4 strokes

⺤ (shòuzìtóu) (the "acceptance" top)　　4 strokes

冖 (tūbǎogài) (the "bald cover" top)　　2 strokes

(7) 教授 jiàoshòu



教 → 孝 + 子 + 攵　　11 strokes



授 → 扌 + ⺤ + 冖 + 又　　11 strokes

(8) 丁力波 Dīng Lìbō

波 → 氵 + 皮　　8 strokes

(9) 张 zhāng (張)

张 → 弓 + 长　　7 strokes

(The meaning side is "弓", and the phonetic side is "长".)

隹 zhuī　　丿 亻 亻 仁 仁 仹 隹 隹　　8 strokes

(10) 谁 shéi (誰)

谁 → 讠 + 隹　　10 strokes

纟 (jiǎosīpáng) (糸) (the "floss silk" side)　　𠃋 纟 纟　　3 strokes

(11) 介绍 jièshào (介紹)

绍 → 纟 + 刀 + 口　　8 strokes

宀 (bǎogàitóu) (the "roof" top)　　丶 丶 宀　　3 strokes

(12) 名字 míngzi

字 → 宀 + 子

(13) 爸爸 bàba

爸 → 父 + 巴　　8 strokes

("父" suggests the meaning and "巴" denotes the pronunciation.)

⺶ (tūwěiyáng)　　6 strokes

(14) 美术 měishù (美術)

美 → ⺶ + 大　　9 strokes

(15) 加拿大 Jiānádà

加 → 力 + 口　　5 strokes

拿 → 人 + 一 + 口 + 手　　10 strokes

(Hands joined together to denote the meaning of "taking".)

文化知识　Cultural Notes

Personal Names

Like most names in the world, Chinese names are made up of two parts: family names (*xing*) and given names (*ming*). While family names generally come from the father's side (nowadays we also find family names which come from the mother's side), parents choose given names for their children. In contrast to names in most European languages, where the surname usually follows the given name, family names always precede given names in Chinese. In the mainland, women retain their family names after marriage.

There are over a thousand Chinese family names. Zhang, Wang, Li, Zhao, and Liu are among the most popular, with about seventy million Zhangs exceeding all others.

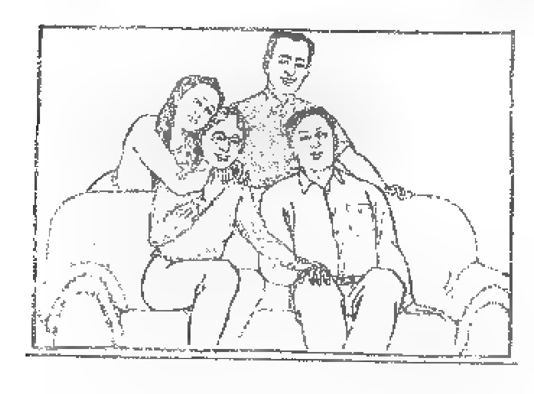
The majority of family names in Chinese consist of a single character, but there are some, such as Ouyang and Sima, that have two, and hence are known as disyllabic or double-character family names (*fuxing*). On the other hand, it is common to have single-character or double-character given names, such as in Song Hua and Lu Yuping. Due to the limited number of family names and shortness of given names, it is not unusual for people to have identical names in China.

This lesson will teach you how to describe your family members, and how to talk about your university and department. You will learn how to count to one hundred, and ask questions related ■ numbers and amount. Finally, we will introduce you to measure words, ■ grammatical category particularly well-developed in the Chinese language.

第八课 Lesson 8

你们 家 有 几 口 人
Nǐmen jiā yǒu jǐ kǒu rén

一、课文 Text




(一)

[谈家庭] Talking about one's family

林 娜： 这 是不是你们 家的 照片？
Lín Nà: Zhè shì bu shì nǐmen jiā de zhàopiàn?

王 小云： 是 啊。①
Wáng Xiǎoyún: Shì a.

林 娜： 我 看 一下。你们 家 有 几 口 人？
Lín Nà: Wǒ kàn yíxià. Nǐmen jiā yǒu jǐ kǒu rén?

王 小云： 我们 家 有 四 口 人。这 是 我 爸爸、我 妈妈，这 是 我 哥哥 和 我。② 你们 家 呢？
Wáng Xiǎoyún: Wǒmen jiā yǒu sì kǒu rén. Zhè shì wǒ bàba、wǒ māma, zhè shì wǒ gēge hé wǒ. Nǐmen jiā ne?

林 娜：　我 有 妈妈，有 一个 姐姐 和 两 个 弟弟。[3]
Lín Nà：　Wǒ yǒu māma, yǒu yí ge jiějie hé liǎng ge dìdi.
我们 家 一共 有 六 口 人。
Wǒmen jiā yígòng yǒu liù kǒu rén.

王小云：　这 是 五 口 人，还 有 谁？[4]
Wáng Xiǎoyún：Zhè shì wǔ kǒu rén, hái yǒu shéi?

林 娜：　还 有 贝贝。
Lín Nà：　Hái yǒu Bèibei.

王小云：　贝贝 是 你 妹妹 吗？
Wáng Xiǎoyún：Bèibei shì nǐ mèimei ma?

林 娜：　不，贝贝 是 我 的 小 狗。
Lín Nà：　Bù, Bèibei shì wǒ de xiǎo gǒu.

王小云：　小 狗 也 是 一 口 人 吗？
Wáng Xiǎoyún：Xiǎo gǒu yě shì yì kǒu rén ma?

林 娜：　贝贝 是 我们 的 好 朋友，当然 是 我们 家 的 人。我 有 一 张 贝贝 的 照片，你 看。
Lín Nà：　Bèibei shì wǒmen de hǎo péngyou, dāngrán shì wǒmen jiā de rén. Wǒ yǒu yì zhāng Bèibei de zhàopiàn, nǐ kàn.

王小云：　真 可爱。
Wáng Xiǎoyún：Zhēn kě'ài.

林 娜：　你们 家 有 小 狗 吗？
Lín Nà：　Nǐmen jiā yǒu xiǎo gǒu ma?

王小云：　我们 家 没有 小 狗。林 娜，你 有 没有 男 朋友？
Wáng Xiǎoyún：Wǒmen jiā méiyǒu xiǎo gǒu. Lín Nà, nǐ yǒu méiyǒu nán péngyou?

林 娜：　我 有 男 朋友。
Lín Nà：　Wǒ yǒu nán péngyou.

【问职业】Asking about someone's occupation

王小云：　他 做 什么 工作？
Wáng Xiǎoyún：Tā zuò shénme gōngzuò?

林 娜：　他 是 医生。
Lín Nà：　Tā shì yīshēng.

生词 New Words

No.	Word	POS	Pinyin	Meaning / Examples
1.	家	N	jiā	family, home 我们家，你们家，他们家
2.	几	QPr	jǐ	how many, how much
*3.	口	M	kǒu	(a measure word mainly for the number of people in a family) 几口人，五口人
4.	照片	N	zhàopiàn	picture, photo 我的照片，我们家的照片
5.	和	Conj	hé	and 爸爸和妈妈，哥哥和我，你和他
6.	个	■	gè	(a measure word for general use) 几个弟弟，一个朋友，五个医生，七个学院，九个系
7.	姐姐	N	jiějie	elder sister
8.	两	Nu	liǎng	two 两口人，两个姐姐，两个老师，两个系
*9.	弟弟	N	dìdi	younger brother
10.	还	Adv	hái	in addition 还有，还要，还认识，还介绍，还学习
11.	一共	Adv	yígòng	altogether 一共有六口人
12.	妹妹	N	mèimei	younger sister
13.	小	A	xiǎo	little, small 小弟弟，小妹妹
14.	狗	N	gǒu	dog 小狗，我的小狗
15.	张	M	zhāng	(a measure word for flat objects) 两张照片，一张名片
16.	当然	A	dāngrán	as it should be; only natural that 当然是，当然去
17.	真	A/Adv	zhēn	real/really 真好，真忙，真高兴，真有意思
18.	可爱	A	kě'ài	lovely, cute 真可爱，可爱的贝贝，可爱的照片
	爱	V	ài	to love 爱爸爸，爱妈妈，爱弟弟妹妹
19.	没	Adv	méi	not 没有
*20.	男	A	nán	male 男朋友，男学生，男老师
21.	做	V	zuò	to do; to make
22.	工作	V/N	gōngzuò	to work/work 他的工作，做工作，做什么工作
23.	王小云	PN	Wáng Xiǎoyún	(name of a Chinese student)
24.	贝贝	PN	Bèibei	(name of a dog)

(二)



林 娜： 语言 学院 大不大？
Lín Nà: Yǔyán Xuéyuàn dà bu dà?

王 小云： 不太大。[5]
Wáng Xiǎoyún: Bú tài dà.

林 娜： 语言 学院 有 多少 个系？
Lín Nà: Yǔyán Xuéyuàn yǒu duōshao ge xì?

王 小云： 有 十二 个 系。
Wáng Xiǎoyún: Yǒu shí'èr ge xì.

林 娜： 你 喜欢 你们 外语 系 吗？
Lín Nà: Nǐ xǐhuan nǐmen Wàiyǔ xì ma?

王 小云： 我 很 喜欢 外语 系。
Wáng Xiǎoyún: Wǒ hěn xǐhuan Wàiyǔ xì.

林 娜： 你们 外语 系 有 多少 老师？
Lín Nà: Nǐmen Wàiyǔ xì yǒu duōshao lǎoshī?

王 小云： 外语 系 有 二十八 个 中国 老师，十一 个 外国 老师。你们 系 呢？
Wáng Xiǎoyún: Wàiyǔ xì yǒu èrshíbā ge Zhōngguó lǎoshī, shíyī ge wàiguó lǎoshī. Nǐmen xì ne?

林 娜： 我们 汉语 系 很 大。我们 系 的 老师 也 很 多，有 一百 个。他们 都 是 中国 人。我们 系 没有 外国 老师。
Lín Nà: Wǒmen Hànyǔ xì hěn dà. Wǒmen xì de lǎoshī yě hěn duō, yǒu yìbǎi ge. Tāmen dōu shì Zhōngguó rén. Wǒmen xì méiyǒu wàiguó lǎoshī.

生词 New Words

1. 大	A	dà	big, large	大照片，大学院
2. 多少	QPr	duōshao	how many, how much	多少人，多少教授
多	A	duō	many, much	
少	A	shǎo	few, less	
3. 喜欢	V	xǐhuan	to like, to prefer	喜欢汉语，喜欢老师
*4. 外语	N	wàiyǔ	foreign language	外语学院，外语老师
外	N	wài	outside	
语	N	yǔ	language	
5. 外国	N	wàiguó	foreign country	外国人，外国朋友，外国学生
6. 百	Nu	bǎi	hundred	一百，二百，三百，四百，八百

补充生词 Supplementary Words

1. 车	N	chē	car; vehicle
2. 词典	N	cídiǎn	dictionary
3. 电脑	N	diànnǎo	computer
4. 孩子	N	háizi	child
5. 爷爷	N	yéye	grandfather on the father's side
6. 外公	N	wàigōng	grandfather on the mother's side
7. 系主任	N	xìzhǔrèn	chairman of the department
8. 助教	N	zhùjiào	teaching assistant
9. 律师	N	lǜshī	lawyer
10. 工程师	N	gōngchéngshī	engineer

二、注释 Notes

① 是啊。

"啊" is a modal particle expressing affirmation.

② 我哥哥和我

The conjunction "和" is generally used to connect pronouns, nouns, or noun phrases. e.g. "他和她","哥哥和弟弟","我们老师和你们老师". "和" cannot be used to connect two clauses, and is seldom used to connect two verbs.

③ 我有一个姐姐和两个弟弟。

When the numeral "2" is used with a measure word in Chinese, the character "两" is used instead of "二". For example: "两张照片", "两个人" (we do not say "二张照片", "二个人"). When the numeral "2" is used alone, as in "一,二,三,…", or when it is used in a multi-digit number, we still use "二", even if it is followed by a measure word. For example: "十二", "二十二", "九十二个人", "二百".

④ 还有谁?

One of the uses of "还" is to make an additional remark. For example:

我有两个姐姐,还有一个弟弟。

我认识马大为,还认识他朋友。

⑤ 不太大。

The adverb "太" can be used in a negative construction. "不太" means "不很…", so "不太大" means "不很大", and "不太忙" means "不很忙". However, when "太" is used in an affirmative construction, such as "太大(了)", "太小(了)" or "太忙(了)", it often means "too much" or "excessively".

三、练习与运用 Drills and Practice

KEY SENTENCES

1. 你们家有几口人?
2. 这是五口人,还有谁?
3. 你有没有男朋友?
4. 我有男朋友。
5. 他做什么工作?
6. 你们外语系有多少老师?
7. 外语系有二十八个中国老师。

1. 熟读下列词组 Master the following phrases

(1) 我们家 我们系 我们学院 我们老师
你们家 你们系 你们学院 你们老师
他们家 他们系 他们学院 他们老师

(2) 我爸爸 我妈妈 我哥哥 我弟弟 我姐姐 我妹妹 我朋友
你爸爸 你妈妈 你哥哥 你弟弟 你姐姐 你妹妹 你朋友

(3) 中国老师 中国学生 中国朋友 中国教授 中国医生 中国人
外国老师 外国学生 外国朋友 外国教授 外国医生 外国人

(4) 我们的名片 我们家的小狗 我们学院的学生 我们系的外国老师
他的照片 他们家的照片 他们学院的老师 他们系的中国老师

(5) 我和你 我们系和你们系 我们系的老师和你们系的老师
你们和他们 汉语学院和外语学院 汉语学院的学生和外语学院的学生

(6) 2口人 4口人 5口人 8口人
12张照片 23张照片 70张名片 100张名片
8个学院 10个系 26个老师 900个学生
2个教授 4个小姐 89个学生 37个人
几口人 几张照片 几个弟弟 几个系
多少人 多少(张)照片 多少(个)朋友 多少(个)系

2. 句型替换 Pattern drills

(1) A: 你有名片吗?
B: 我没有名片。

小狗
照片
车(chē)
电脑(diànnǎo)
汉语词典(cídiǎn)

(2) A: 他有没有中国朋友?
B: 他有中国朋友。
A: 他有几个中国朋友?
B: 他有两个中国朋友。

弟弟
姐姐
孩子(háizi)

(3) A: 你们系的外国学生多不多?
B: 我们系的外国学生不太多。
A: 你们系有多少外国学生?
B: 我们系有20个外国学生。

教授	3
外国老师	2
助教(zhùjiào)	7
中国学生	15

(4) A: 你们家有几口人?
B: 我们家有6口人。
A: 你爸爸做什么工作?
B: 他是教授。

5	医生
3	记者(jìzhě)
4	律师(lǜshī)

(5) A: 他们有几个孩子(háizi)?
B: 他们有2个孩子,都很可爱。
A: 都是男孩子吗?
B: 不是,他们有1个男孩子和1个女孩子。

3	1	2
4	2	2
5	2	3

3. 与你的同学口头做算术题 Solve the following math problems verbally

(1) E.g. 1+2=? A:一加(jiā, plus)二是多少?
B:一加二是三。

3+7=?
28+22=?
42+35=?
56+12=?
68+32=?

(2) E.g. 15−12=? A:十五减(jiǎn, minus)十二是多少?
B:十五减十二是三。

36−16=?
47−29=?
53−38=?
90−69=?
100−12=?

(3) E.g. 4×3=? A:四乘(chéng, times)三是多少?
B:四乘三是十二。

4×5=?
3×9=?
6×7=?
8×4=?
9×8=?

4. 会话练习 Conversation practice

【谈家庭 Talking about one's family】

(1) A:你们家有几口人?

B:________________。

A:你有没有哥哥和姐姐?

B:我有________________,没有________________。你呢?

A:我有一个________________,两个__________。

(2) A:你爸爸、妈妈做什么工作?

B:我爸爸是__________,妈妈是__________。你爸爸妈妈呢?

A:我爸爸是__________,妈妈不工作。

(3) A:你哥哥做什么工作?

B:他是学生。

A:他学习什么专业?

B:他学习________。

【谈学校 Talking about one's university】

(1) A:你们学院大不大?

B:________________。

A:你们学院有多少(个)系?

B:________________。

A:你们学院有多少(个)专业?

B:________________。

A:你喜欢你的专业吗?

B:我当然喜欢。

(2) A:你们系的老师多不多?

B:我们系的老师__________。

A:你们系有没有外国老师?

B:我们系有外国老师。

A:你们系的外国老师__________?

B:我们系的外国老师很少。

(3) A:你们汉语系的学生多不多?

B:我们系的学生__________。

A:你们系的男(学)生多吗?

B:我们系的男(学)生很少,女(学)生__________。

A:你喜欢不喜欢你们系?

B:我很喜欢。

5. 交际练习 Communication exercises

(1) Introduce your family to your good friend.

(2) Talk about your friend's family.

(3) One of your friends inquires about your department. How do you answer him/her?

四. 阅读和复述 Reading Comprehension and Paraphrasing

丁力波是加拿大学生。他家有五口人:爸爸、妈妈、哥哥、弟弟和他。他妈妈姓丁,叫丁云,是中国人。他爸爸叫古波,是加拿大人。二十年(nián, year)前(qián, ago)古波在加拿大认识丁云,那时候,丁云学习英语(Yīngyǔ, English),古波学习汉语。

现在丁云和古波都是汉语教授。他们有三个男孩子(háizi),没有女孩子。现在丁力波和他哥哥、弟弟都在北京(Běijīng)。丁力波是语言学院的学生,他学习汉语。他很喜欢语言学院。语言学院不太大,有十二个系。汉语系有一百个中国老师,学生都是外国人。外语系的学生是中国人,外语系有很多外国老师。丁力波的中国朋友都是外语系的学生。丁力波的哥哥学习历史专业,他弟弟的专业是经济(jīngjì)。

他们的外婆(wàipó)也在北京。他们常常(chángcháng, often)去外婆家,他们很爱外婆。

五. 语法 Grammar

1. 11—100的称数法 Numbers from 11 to 100

11 十一	12 十二	13 十三	……	19 十九	20 二十
21 二十一	22 二十二	23 二十三	……	29 二十九	30 三十
31 三十一	32 三十二	33 三十三	……	39 三十九	40 四十
⋮	⋮	⋮		⋮	⋮
81 八十一	82 八十二	83 八十三	……	89 八十九	90 九十
91 九十一	92 九十二	93 九十三	……	99 九十九	100 一百

2. 数量词作定语 Numeral-measure words as attributives

In modern Chinese, a numeral alone cannot directly function as an attributive to modify a noun but must be combined with a measure word. All nouns have their own particular measure words.

Nu +	M +	N
五	口	人
一	个	姐姐
十二	个	系
二十	张	照片

"个" is the most commonly used measure word, applied before nouns referring to people, things, and units. (It is read in the neutral tone). "张" is usually used before nouns of objects with a flat surface such as paper, photographs, and business cards. The measure word "口" is used to express the number of people in a family when it is combined with "人". For example: "五口人". In other cases, "个" should be used. For example: "我们班有二十个人." One cannot say "我们班有二十口人."

3. "有"字句 Sentences with "有"

The sentence taking the verb "有" as the main element of the predicate usually expresses possession. Its negative form is formed by adding the adverb "没" before "有". (Note: "不" cannot be used here.) Its V-not-V form is "有没有".

(没)+ 有 + O

Subject	*Predicate*		
	(没)有	**O**	**Pt**
我	有	姐姐。	
她	没有	男朋友。	
你	有	名片	吗?
你	有没有	照片?	
语言学院	有	十二个系。	
我们系	没有	外国老师。	
你们家	有没有	小狗?	

If the subject of a sentence with "有" is a noun indicating a work unit, place or location, this kind of sentence with "有" is similar to the English sentence pattern of "There is / are...".

4. 用"几"或"多少"提问 Questions with "几" or "多少"

The question pronouns "几" and "多少" are used to ask about numbers. "几" is often used to ask about numbers less than 10, and a measure word is needed between it and the noun. "多少" may be used to ask about any number, and the measure word after it is optional.

几 + M + N	多少 (+M) + N
你们家有几口人?	你们系有多少(个)学生?
我家有五口人。	我们系有五百个学生。

六. 汉字 Chinese Characters

1. 汉字的结构 (1) Structure of Chinese characters(1)

Structurally speaking, Chinese characters fall into two categories: The single-component characters and the multi-component characters. All of the basic Chinese characters we have learned so far are simple-component characters, such as "人", "手", "刀", "马", "牛", "羊", "日", "月", "水", "木", "上", "下". The multi-component characters consist of two or more components, such as "爸", "妈", "你", "们", "哪", "语". The order of writing components in a character is similar to the stroke order of writing a character. There are three basic types of configuration for multi-component characters:

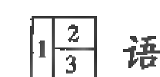
The left-right structure ①

a. Equal left-right: (the numbers in the figure indicate the order of writing the components.)

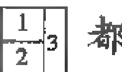
| 1 | 2 | 朋

b. Small left-big right





c. Big left-small right



2. 认写基本汉字 Learn and write basic Chinese characters

(1) 几(幾) 丿 几
jǐ how many 2 strokes

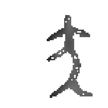
(2) 禾 
hé standing grain 5 strokes

(3) 个(個) 丿 人 个
gè (measure word) 3 strokes

(4) 两 一 丆 円 丙 丙 两 两
liǎng two 7 strokes

(5) 未 一 二 丰 未 未
wèi have not 5 strokes

(6) 犬 一 ナ 大 犬
quǎn dog 4 strokes

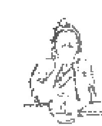




(7) 云(雲) 一 二 云 云
yún clouds 4 strokes



(8) 少 丨 小 小 少
shǎo few; less 4 strokes



(9) 士 一 十 士
shì person 3 strokes

(10) 欠 丿 ⺈ 攵 欠
qiàn to owe 4 strokes

(11) 夕 丿 ク 夕
xī evening 3 strokes



(12) 卜 丨 卜
bǔ divination 2 strokes

(13) 百 (一 + 白)
bǎi hundred 6 strokes



3. 认写课文中的汉字 Learn and write the Chinese characters appearing in the texts

系 shì 一 ⺈ 了 孓 豸 系 系 7 strokes

(1) 家 jiā

家 → 宀 + 豕　　10 strokes



(The "roof top", "宀", denotes a hut. A hut with a pig represents a house. The character "家" reflects the history of the ancient Chinese people advancing from hunting to animal husbandry.)

灬 (sìdiǎndǐ) (The character "火" is written as "灬" at the bottom of a multi-component character, and is called the "four-dots" bottom.) 丶 ⺌ 灬 灬　　4 strokes

(2) 照片 zhàopiàn

照 → 日 + 刀 + 口 + 灬　　13 strokes

(The meaning part is "日", and the phonetic part is "召".)

(3) 和 hé

和 → 禾 + 口　　8 strokes

丷 (dìzìtóu) (the "younger-brother" top) 丶 丷　　2 strokes

(4) 弟弟 dìdi

弟 → 丷 + 弔(一 ㇕ 弓 弔 弟)　　7 strokes

(5) 还 hái (還)

还 → 不 + 辶　　7 strokes

(6) 一共 yígòng

共 → 龷 + 八　　6 strokes

(7) 妹妹 mèimei

妹 → 女 + 未　　8 strokes

(The "female" side "女", indicates the character has a feminine connotation.)

犭 (quǎnzìpáng) (the "dog" side) ノ 犭 犭　　3 strokes

勹 (bāozìtóu) (the "wrapping" top) ノ 勹　　2 strokes

(8) 狗 gǒu

狗 → 犭 + 勹 + 口　　8 strokes

("犬" is the original character for "狗". It is written as "犭" on the left side of characters indicating animals.)

⺌ (dāngzìtóu) (the "matching" top) 丨 ⺌ ⺌　　3 strokes

彐 (héngshān) ㇕ ㇕ 彐　　3 strokes

(9) 当然 dāngrán (當然)

当 → ⺌ + 彐　　6 strokes

然 → 夕 + 犬 + 灬　　12 strokes

(The combination of a "flesh" side, a "dog" side and a "fire" side, indicating "to roast dog meat over the fire", produces the character, "然", which originally meant "burning". Now this character carries other meanings.)

(10) 真 zhēn

真 → 十 + 且 + 八　　10 strokes

(11) 可爱 kě'ài (可愛)

爱 → 爫 + 冖 + 友　　10 strokes

殳 shū ノ 几 殳 殳　　4 strokes

(12) 没 méi

没 → 氵 + 殳　　7 strokes

(13) 男 nán

男 → 田 + 力　　7 strokes

(14) 做 zuò

做 → 亻 + 古 + 攵　　11 strokes

乍 zhà ノ 𠂉 午 乍 乍　　5 strokes

(15) 工作 gōngzuò

作 → 亻 + 乍　　7 strokes

(16) 多少 duōshao

多 → 夕 + 夕　　6 strokes

(17) 喜欢 xǐhuan (喜歡)

喜 → 士 + 口 + 丷 + 一 + 口　12 strokes

欢 → 又 + 欠　6 strokes

(On the left side of a multi-component character, the second stroke of "又" is written as an extended dot.)

(18) 外语 wàiyǔ (外語)

外 → 夕 + 卜　5 strokes

文化知识　Cultural Notes

Forms of Address for Family and Relatives

While the Chinese words for "mother", "father", "son", and "daughter" are used in ways similar to what we find in English, addressing siblings and relatives is fairly complex in Chinese. Two principles govern how Chinese family members are addressed: 1) relatives on the paternal side are distinguished from those on the mother's side; and 2) age relative to the speaker is taken into consideration.

The English words "grandfather" and "grandmother" can refer to grandparents on either the father's or mother's side. In Chinese, on the other hand, one has to indicate whether they are the father's or the mother's parents. The parents of one's father are *zufu* "grandfather" and *zumu* "grandmother" and are informally called *yeye* "grandpa" and *nainai* "grandma". However, the terms for one's mother's parents are *waizufu* "maternal grandfather" and *waizumu* "maternal grandmother", and in spoken Chinese, *waigong* (or *laoye*), and *waipo* (or *laolao*), meaning literally "maternal grandpa" and "maternal grandma" respectively.

In Chinese special terms indicate whether siblings are older or younger than the speaker. For instance, instead of a term equivalent to the English "brother", Chinese has *gege* "elder brother" and *didi* "younger brother". Similarly, "elder sister" is *jiejie*, and "younger sister" is *meimei*. In Chinese, one must always be sure to differentiate between elder and younger siblings and use the correct term.

Have you ever wondered how Chinese celebrate their birthdays? In this lesson we will talk about birthday customs in China, and you will learn how to ask the age and birthplace of others. You will begin learning the days, weeks, months, and years in Chinese, and look at the Chinese zodiac animals, a remarkable creation of Chinese culture.

第九课 Lesson 9

他今年二十岁
Tā jīnnián èrshí suì

一、课文　Text





王小云：林娜，你怎么样？① 忙不忙？
Wáng Xiǎoyún: Lín Nà, nǐ zěnmeyàng? Máng bu máng?

林娜：我今天很忙。
Lín Nà: Wǒ jīntiān hěn máng.

王小云：明天上午你有没有课？
Wáng Xiǎoyún: Míngtiān shàngwǔ nǐ yǒu méiyǒu kè?

林娜：明天是星期几？
Lín Nà: Míngtiān shì xīngqī jǐ?

王小云：明天是星期四。
Wáng Xiǎoyún: Míngtiān shì xīngqīsì.

林　娜：我　上午、下午　都　有　课。
Lín Nà：Wǒ shàngwǔ、xiàwǔ dōu yǒu kè.

【约会】Making an appointment

王　小云：你 星期日 有　时间　吗？
Wáng Xiǎoyún：Nǐ xīngqīrì yǒu shíjiān ma?

林　娜：星期日 是 几 号？
Lín Nà：Xīngqīrì shì jǐ hào?

王　小云：星期日　是　十月　二十七 号，是　宋　华　的　生日。
Wáng Xiǎoyún：Xīngqīrì shì shíyuè èrshíqī hào, shì Sòng Huá de shēngri.

林　娜：是　吗？[2] 他 今年　多　大？[3]
Lín Nà：Shì ma? Tā jīnnián duō dà?

王　小云：宋　华 一 九 八 二　年　十月　二十七 日　出生，属　狗。[4] 他 今年　二十　岁。
Wáng Xiǎoyún：Sòng Huá yī jiǔ bā èr nián shíyuè èrshíqī rì chūshēng, shǔ gǒu. Tā jīnnián èrshí suì.

【问年龄和出生地】Asking about someone's age and birthplace

林　娜：他 是 哪儿 人？[5]
Lín Nà：Tā shì nǎr rén?

王　小云：他 是　北京　人。他 爸爸、妈妈　都　在　北京。星期日　下午　我们　有 一个 聚会，祝贺 他 的 生日。力波、大为　都　去，你　参加 不　参加？
Wáng Xiǎoyún：Tā shì Běijīng rén. Tā bàba、māma dōu zài Běijīng. Xīngqīrì xiàwǔ wǒmen yǒu yí ge jùhuì, zhùhè tā de shēngri. Lìbō、Dàwéi dōu qù, nǐ cānjiā bu cānjiā?

林　娜：太　好　了！我　当然　参加。中国　人　生日 吃　蛋糕　吗？
Lín Nà：Tài hǎo le! Wǒ dāngrán cānjiā. Zhōngguó rén shēngri chī dàngāo ma?

王　小云：吃　蛋糕。
Wáng Xiǎoyún：Chī dàngāo.

林　娜：我　买　一个 大　蛋糕，好　吗？
Lín Nà：Wǒ mǎi yí ge dà dàngāo, hǎo ma?

王　小云：好 啊。我　买　两　瓶　红葡萄酒。
Wáng Xiǎoyún：Hǎo a. Wǒ mǎi liǎng píng hóngpútaojiǔ.

生词 New Words

1.	今年	N	jīnnián	this year
	年	N	nián	year　2002年，2000年，1998年，一年，两年
2.	岁	M	suì	year (of age)　五岁，十八岁，二十岁，三十六岁
*3.	怎么样	QPr	zěnmeyàng	how is …　天气怎么样，你怎么样
*4.	今天	N	jīntiān	today　今天上午，今天下午
5.	课	N	kè	class; lesson　有课，汉语课，文化课，一课，两课
6.	星期	N	xīngqī	week　星期一，星期二，星期几，一个星期
7.	上午	N	shàngwǔ	morning　明天上午，一个上午
	上	N	shàng	above; last　上星期，上星期二，上个月
8.	下午	N	xiàwǔ	afternoon　明天下午，一个下午
	下	N	xià	below; next　下星期，下星期三，下个月
9.	星期日	N	xīngqīrì	Sunday　星期日上午，星期日下午
*10.	号	N	hào	day of the month　五月四号，十月一号
11.	生日	N	shēngri	birthday　他的生日，二十岁生日
	生	V	shēng	to be born
12.	多大	IE	duō dà	how old　今年多大
	多	Adv	duō	how
	大	A	dà	old
13.	出生	V	chūshēng	to be born　1982年出生
	出	V	chū	to go out; to come out
14.	属	V	shǔ	to be born in the year of　属狗，属马
15.	聚会	N	jùhuì	get-together; party　生日聚会，有一个聚会
	会	N	huì	meeting
16.	祝贺	V	zhùhè	to congratulate　祝贺生日
	祝	V	zhù	to wish

17. 参加	V	cānjiā	to participate; to attend 参加聚会
*18. 了	Pt	le	(modal partical/aspect partical)
19. 吃	V	chī	to eat
20. 蛋糕	N	dàngāo	cake 一个蛋糕，吃蛋糕
蛋	N	dàn	egg
糕	N	gāo	cake
21. 买	V	mǎi	to buy 买蛋糕
22. 瓶	M	píng	bottle 一瓶水
23. 红葡萄酒	N	hóngpútaojiǔ	red wine 一瓶红葡萄酒
红	A	hóng	red
葡萄	N	pútao	grape 吃葡萄，买葡萄
酒	N	jiǔ	wine or liquor
*24. 宋华	PN	Sòng Huá	(name of a Chinese student)
25. 北京	PN	Běijīng	Beijing



(二)

林 娜：宋 华，这 是 生日 蛋糕。
Lín Nà: Sòng Huá, zhè shì shēngri dàngāo.
祝 你 生日 快乐！⑥
Zhù nǐ shēngri kuàilè!

【祝贺生日】
Celebrating someone's birthday

宋 华：谢谢。蛋糕 真 漂亮。你们 来，我 很 高兴。
Sòng Huá: Xièxie. Dàngāo zhēn piàoliang. Nǐmen lái, wǒ hěn gāoxìng.

马 大为：今天 我们 吃 北京 烤鸭。我 很 喜欢 吃 烤鸭。⑦
Mǎ Dàwéi: Jīntiān wǒmen chī Běijīng kǎoyā. Wǒ hěn xǐhuan chī kǎoyā.

丁 力波：我们 喝 什么 酒？
Dīng Lìbō: Wǒmen hē shénme jiǔ?

王 小云：当然 喝 红葡萄酒，我们 还 吃 寿面。⑧
Wáng Xiǎoyún: Dāngrán hē hóngpútaojiǔ, wǒmen hái chī shòumiàn.

林 娜：吃 寿面？真 有 意思。
Lín Nà: Chī shòumiàn? Zhēn yǒu yìsi.

宋 华：林 娜，你 的 生日 是 哪 天？
Sòng Huá: Lín Nà, nǐ de shēngri shì nǎ tiān?

林 娜：十一月 十二 号。
Lín Nà: Shíyīyuè shí'èr hào.

宋 华：好，十一月 十二 号 我们 再 来 吃 寿面。
Sòng Huá: Hǎo, shíyīyuè shí'èr hào wǒmen zài lái chī shòumiàn.

生词 New Words

1. 快乐	A	kuàilè	happy 生日快乐
2. 漂亮	A	piàoliang	pretty, beautiful; nice 漂亮的小姐，漂亮的照片
3. 烤鸭	N	kǎoyā	roast duck 北京烤鸭，吃烤鸭
鸭	N	yā	duck
*4. 喝	V	hē	to drink 喝葡萄酒，喝咖啡(kāfēi)
5. 再	Adv	zài	again 再来，再买，再看，再做
6. 寿面	N	shòumiàn	(birthday) longevity noodles 吃寿面
面	N	miàn	noodles 吃面

补充生词 Supplementary Words

1. 晚上	N	wǎnshang	evening
2. 中餐	N	zhōngcān	Chinese food
3. 西餐	N	xīcān	Western food
4. 茶	N	chá	tea
5. 可乐	N	kělè	coke
6. 雪碧	N	xuěbì	Sprite
7. 啤酒	N	píjiǔ	beer
8. 汉堡	N	hànbǎo	hamburger
9. 热狗	N	règǒu	hotdog
10. 面包	N	miànbāo	bread
11. 牛奶	N	niúnǎi	milk
12. 米饭	N	mǐfàn	(cooked) rice

二、注释 Notes

① 你怎么样？

This is also a form of greeting used among acquaintances and friends, and is similar to "你好吗？"

② 是吗？

The phrase "是吗？" does not raise a question here, but expresses mild surprise on the part of the speaker concerning something that he/she does not know. For example:

A：丁力波的哥哥和弟弟都在北京。

B：是吗？

Sometimes it expresses doubt, or modesty when receiving praise. (See Lesson Eleven.)

③ 他今年多大？

Here "多" is an adverb, followed by an adjective. The phrase "多 + A" is used to raise a question, and in this case "大" refers to age.

In asking about age in Chinese, one has to choose different forms for different groups of people. "你今年多大？" can only be used to ask the age of an adult, or people of the same generation as the speaker. When asking the age of a child, we usually say "你今年几岁？", and when asking the age of an elderly person or those older than the speaker, a more polite form has to be used, which will be taught in Lesson Eleven.

④ 宋华一九八二年十月二十七日出生，属狗。

It is customary for the Chinese to designate one's year of birth according to twelve animals, which are arranged in the following order: rat, ox, tiger, rabbit, dragon, snake, horse, ram, monkey, rooster, dog, and pig. These form a twelve-year cycle. For example, the year 1982, 1994 and 2006 are all designated "dog" years. The people who are born in these years are said to "belong to the year of dog", which, in Chinese, is written as "属狗". The years 1988, 2000 and 2012 are dragon years. Those who are born in these years all "属龙".

⑤ 他是哪儿人？

This is an expression usually used to ask someone's place of birth. It can also be said as "他哪儿人？", with "是" omitted; and in answering "哪儿", it is usually necessary to specify a province, city, or county. When asking about nationality, we use the expression "哪国人？"

⑥ 祝你生日快乐！

This is a familiar form of expression used to give greetings to someone on his/her birthday. "祝你…" is used to express good wishes, sometimes with the implication of "congratulating in advance", whereas "祝贺你…" is commonly used to congratulate someone on something that is already known or has already occurred. For example:

A：我下星期天结婚(jiéhūn, to get married)。

B：祝贺你！

⑦ 我很喜欢吃烤鸭。

A verb or a verbal phrase can funtion as the object of the predicative verb. For example:

他喜欢说。

我喜欢学习汉语。

⑧ 我们还吃寿面。

When celebrating birthdays, a traditional Chinese custom is to eat "longevity noodles". The length of noodles symbolizes "longevity".

三. 练习与运用 Drills and Practice

KEY SENTENCES

1. 他今年多大?
2. 他今年二十岁。
3. 星期日是几号?
4. 星期五上午你有没有课?
5. 他一九八二年十月二十七号出生。
6. 我买一个大蛋糕,好吗?
7. 我很喜欢吃烤鸭。
8. 祝你生日快乐!

1. 熟读下列词组 Master the following phrases

(1) 今天上午　明天下午　五月八号上午　上星期　上星期三　上星期三下午
　星期二上午　星期六下午　九月二十号下午　下星期　下星期日　下星期三上午

(2) 一九七〇年出生　一九八五年学习汉语　一九九〇年工作
　一九九九年来中国　二〇〇〇年认识张教授　二〇〇二年到北京

(3) 一个蛋糕　两瓶葡萄酒　五张照片　三个朋友　一个妹妹　一个聚会

(4) 宋华的生日　你的生日　他们的聚会　林娜的蛋糕　王小云的酒

(5) 生日蛋糕　大蛋糕　红葡萄酒　北京烤鸭

2. 句型替换 Pattern drills

(1) A: 今天是(几月)几号?
　B: 今天是十一月八号。
　A: 明天是星期几?
　B: 明天是星期四。

2002	2002	2002
九月小　27　星期五	十月大　16　星期三	十二月大　31　星期二

(2) A: 二月五号是不是星期六?
　B: 二月五号不是星期六,是星期五。
　A: 星期五你有没有课?
　B: 我上午有课,下午没有课。

2月

一	二	三	四	五	六	日
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
8	9	10	11	12	13	14
15	16	17	18	19	20	21
22	23	24	25	26	27	28

(3) A: 星期六是几号?
　B: 星期六是十二月十七号。
　A: 星期六他做什么?
　B: 他去朋友家。

星期五　看京剧(jīngjù)
星期一　参加聚会
星期日　吃烤鸭

(4) A: 你现在忙不忙?
　B: 我现在很忙。
　A: 你星期几有时间?
　B: 我星期五下午有时间。

星期日
星期四上午
星期二下午

(5) A: 你几号来北京?
　B: 我下月二号来北京。
　A: 下月二号是星期几?
　B: 下月二号是星期一。

去　加拿大
来　中国
去　美国

(6) A: 你今年多大?
　B: 我今年21岁。
　A: 你的生日是哪天?
　B: 我的生日是8月31号。

19	1月6日
20	3月12日
22	4月22号

(7) A: 你是哪儿人?
　B: 我是北京人。
　A: 北京怎么样?
　B: 北京很漂亮。

上海(Shànghǎi)
温哥华(Wēngēhuá)
多伦多(Duōlúnduō)
纽约(Niǔyuē)
伦敦(Lúndūn)

(8) A: 你参加明天的聚会吗?
　B: 我当然参加。
　A: 我买两瓶红葡萄酒,好吗?
　B: 好啊,我买一个大蛋糕。

两瓶可乐(kělè)　五个汉堡(hànbǎo)
三瓶雪碧(xuěbì)　八个热狗(règǒu)
六瓶啤酒(píjiǔ)　九个面包(miànbāo)

3. 回答下列问题 Answer the following questions

(1) 一年有几个月?

(2) 一年有多少个星期?

(3) 一个星期有几天?

(4) 十一月有多少天?

(5) 十一月有几个星期天?

(6) 今天几月几号? 星期几?

(7) 星期天是几号?

(8) 星期天你做什么?

(9) 你喜欢吃什么?

(10) 你喜欢喝茶(chá)吗?

4. 会话练习 Conversation practice

【约会 Making an appointment】

(1) A: 你怎么样? 忙不忙?

B: ______________。

A: 星期五下午你有时间吗? 我们去______________,好吗?

B: 太好了,我当然去。

(2) A: 十二号你有时间吗?

B: 十二号是星期三吗?

A: 不是,十二号是星期四。我们下午有个聚会,你参加不参加?

B: 对不起(duìbuqǐ),______________,恐怕(kǒngpà)不行(xíng)。

A: 没关系(méi guānxi)。

【问年龄和出生地 Asking about someone's age and birthplace】

(1) A: 你今年多大?

B: 我今年二十八(岁)。

A: 你的生日是哪天?

B: 今天是我的生日。

A: 祝你生日快乐!

B: 谢谢。

(2) A: 您是哪儿人?

B: 我是上海(Shànghǎi)人。

A: 你爸爸妈妈都在上海吗?

B: 不,他们现在______________。

A: 他们都好吗?

B: 谢谢,他们都很好。

(3) A: 你哥哥有孩子(háizi)吗?

B: 他有一个女孩子。

A: 她今年几岁?

B: 她______________。

【祝贺生日 Celebrating someone's birthday】

(1) A: 下星期五是林娜的生日,我们有个聚会。你来不来?

B: 我当然来。______________,好吗?

A: 好啊! 我买______________。

B: 太好了,我们喝葡萄酒,吃蛋糕和寿面。

(2) A: 今天是你的生日,祝你生日快乐!

B: 谢谢。你们来,我很高兴。

5. 交际练习 Communication exercises

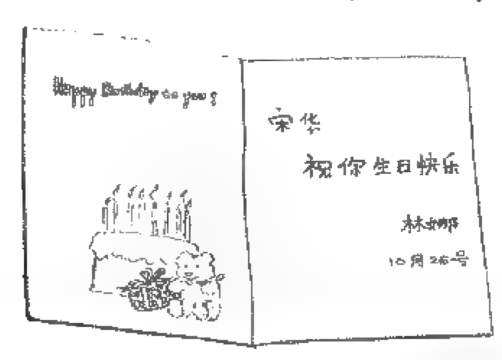
Your friend is trying to make an appointment with you. Please reply according to your schedule for next week:

	星期一	星期二	星期三	星期四	星期五	星期六	星期日
上午	汉语课	文化课	汉语课		汉语课	看朋友	
下午		汉语课		汉语课	打球 dǎ qiú		生日聚会
晚上 wǎnshang	朋友来		游泳 yóuyǒng			看京剧 jīngjù	

四. 阅读和复述 Reading Comprehension and Paraphrasing

宋华是经济(jīngjì)系的学生,北京人,1982年出生。今年十月二十七日是他二十岁的生日。星期天下午,他的好朋友们有一个聚会,王小云、林娜、丁力波和马大为都来祝贺他的生日。他们在北京烤鸭店(diàn, store)吃烤鸭和寿面,喝红葡萄酒。朋友们祝宋华生日快乐,宋华非常高兴。

林娜的生日是十一月十二号。宋华说那天他们再来吃寿面和烤鸭。



五. 语法 Grammar

1. 年、月、日和星期 Expressing the date and days of the week

In Chinese, the four figures making up the name of a year are read out as four separate numbers and "年" is put at the end. For example:

一九九八年	yī jiǔ jiǔ bā nián
二〇〇〇年	èr líng líng líng nián
二〇〇二年	èr líng líng èr nián
二〇一〇年	èr líng yī líng nián

The names of the 12 months are produced by combining the cardinal numbers 1 to 12 with "月". For example:

一月	yīyuè	January	七月	qīyuè	July
二月	èryuè	February	八月	bāyuè	August
三月	sānyuè	March	九月	jiǔyuè	September
四月	sìyuè	April	十月	shíyuè	October
五月	wǔyuè	May	十一月	shíyīyuè	November
六月	liùyuè	June	十二月	shí'èryuè	December

The names of the dates are produced by combining cardinal numbers 1 to 30 (or 31) with "号"(spoken form) or "日" (written form). For example:

(二月)六号	(èryuè) liù hào	February 6
(十月)十二号	(shíyuè) shí'èr hào	October 12
(十一月)二十二日	(shíyīyuè) èrshí'èr rì	November 22
(十二月)三十一日	(shí'èryuè) sānshíyī rì	December 31

If one mentions a date in the current month, one can omit "月" and simply say "…号".

The cardinal numbers from 1 to 6 follow "星期" to express Monday to Saturday. The name for Sunday is "星期天" (spoken form) or "星期日" (written form).

星期一	xīngqīyī	Monday	星期五	xīngqīwǔ	Friday
星期二	xīngqī'èr	Tuesday	星期六	xīngqīliù	Saturday
星期三	xīngqīsān	Wednesday	星期日	xīngqīrì	Sunday
星期四	xīngqīsì	Thursday			

The word order for expressing the date and days of the week is:

年 + 月 + 日 + 星期

二〇〇〇年十二月二十五日 星期三

2000年 12月 25日 星期三

2. 表时间的词语作状语 Words expressing time as adverbials

Words expressing time, such as "现在", "今天", "下午", "二月二十号" can function as adverbials to indicate the time of occurrence of an action or a state. Adverbials of time (Time-When) can be placed either (1) after the subject and before the main element of the predicate or (2) before the subject to emphasize the time.

S + TW + VO/A

Subject	***Predicate***		
	T W	**V O / A**	
你	星期日	有 时间	吗?
我	上午、下午	都 有 课。	
中国人	生日	吃 蛋糕	吗?
宋华	1982年10月27日	出生。	
我	今天	很 忙。	

TW + S + VO/A

Time words	*Subject*	*Predicate*	
		V	O / A
明天上午	你	有没有	课？
星期日下午	我们	有	一个聚会。
今天	我们	吃	北京烤鸭。
11月12号	我们	再 来 吃	寿面。
今天	我	很	忙。

Note：1. Adverbials of time (Time-When) can never be placed after the predicative verb. For example, one cannot say "我们吃烤鸭今天".

2. If there is more than one word expressing time in one adverbial, a large unit of time should be put before a smaller unit. For example："明天上午"，"星期日下午".

3. 名词谓语句 Sentences with a nominal predicate

Nouns, noun phrases, and numeral-measure words can function directly as the predicate of a sentence and do not need the verb "是". This kind of sentence is especially used to express age, price (see Lesson 10), and so on. In spoken language, it is also used to express time (see Lesson 11) or birth place.

S + Nu—M

Subject	*Predicate*
	Nu-M
宋华	今年 二十岁。
林娜	十九岁。

4. 用"好吗？"提问 Using "好吗？" to ask a question

Questions with "好吗？" are often used to give a suggestion or to ask for an opinion. The first part of such a question is a declarative sentence, and its last part can also be "可以吗？".

我们买一个大蛋糕，好吗？

我们去游泳(yóuyǒng)，好吗？

现在去，可以吗？

Some examples of affirmative answers are："好啊"，"好"，"太好了".

六、汉字 Chinese Characters

1. 汉字的结构(2) Structure of Chinese characters (2)

The left-right structure ②

a. Equal left-middle-right

| 1 | 2 | 3 |

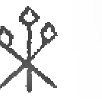
谢 娜

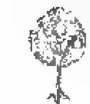
2. 认写基本汉字 Learn and write basic Chinese characters

(1) 今 丿 人 亼 今
jīn present day 4 strokes

(2) 年 丿 𠂉 𠂉 仁 仨 年
nián year 6 strokes

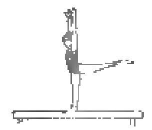
(3) 果 丨 冂 日 日 旦 甲 果 果
guǒ fruit 8 strokes





(4) 其 一 十 廾 甘 甘 苴 其 其
qí he(his)；she(her) 8 strokes

(5) 上 丨 卜 上
shàng above 3 strokes
(Placing "上" on top of "一" means "above".)

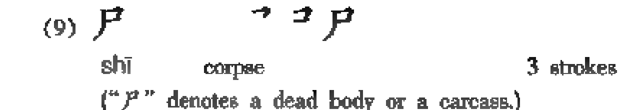


(6) 午 丿 𠂉 仁 午
wǔ noon 4 strokes

(7) 出 𠃊 凵 屮 出 出
chū to go/come out 5 strokes
("凵" denotes a cave, and "屮" denotes one foot stepping out of the cave.)



(8) 面 (麵) 一 丆 丆 万 而 而 而 面 面
miàn noodles 9 strokes



(9) 尸　フ コ 尸

shī　corpse　3 strokes

("尸" denotes a dead body or a carcass.)

(10) 了　フ 了

le　(particle)　2 strokes

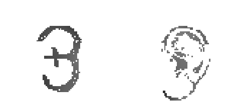
(11) 虫(蟲)　丶 口 中 虫 虫

chóng　insect; worm　6 strokes



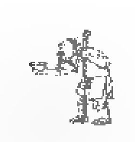
(12) 耳　一 厂 丌 FF 耳 耳

ěr　ear　6 strokes



(13) 乞　丿 𠂉 乞

qǐ　to beg　3 strokes



(14) 米　丶 丷 䒑 平 米 米

mǐ　rice　6 strokes

(The four dots in "米" stand for grains of rice.)

(14) 头(頭)　丶 冫 三 头 头

tóu　head　5 strokes

(15) 瓦　一 工 瓦 瓦

wǎ　tile　4 strokes

3. 认写课文中的汉字 Learn and write the Chinese characters appearing in the texts

(1) 岁 suì (歲)

岁 → 山 + 夕　6 strokes

(2) 怎么样 zěnmeyàng (怎麼樣)

怎 → 乍 + 心　9 strokes

样 → 木 + 羊　10 strokes

(3) 课 kè (課)

课 → 讠 + 果　10 strokes

(4) 星期 xīngqī

星 → 日 + 生　9 strokes

期 → 其 + 月　12 strokes

丂 (hàozìdǐ) (the "number" bottom) 一 丂　2 strokes

(5) 号 hào (號)

号 → 口 + 丂　5 strokes

(6) 属 shǔ (屬)

属 → 尸 + 一 + 虫 + 冂　12 strokes

𧘇 (jùzìdǐ) 丿 丁 亻 豸 豸 𧘇　6 strokes

(7) 聚会 jùhuì (聚會)

聚 → 耳 + 又 + 𧘇　14 strokes

会 → 人 + 云　6 strokes

礻 (shìzìpáng) (the "manifestation" side) 丶 ナ オ 礻　4 strokes

(8) 祝贺 zhùhè (祝賀)

祝 → 礻 + 兄　9 strokes

贺 → 力 + 口 + 贝　9 strokes

(9) 吃 chī

吃 → 口 + 乞　6 strokes

(to use mouth "口" to eat "吃")

疋 (pǐzìtóu) (the "foot" top) 一 丅 下 ヱ 疋　5 strokes

(10) 蛋糕 dàngāo

蛋 → 疋 + 虫　11 strokes

糕 → 米 + 羔　16 strokes

(On the left side of a character, the sixth stroke in "米" is written as a dot.)

乛 (hénggōu) (a horizontal stroke with a hook) 1 stroke

(11) 买 mǎi (買)

买 → 乛 + 头 6 strokes

(12) 瓶 píng

瓶 → 丷 + 开 + 瓦 10 strokes

(13) 红 hóng (紅)

红 → 纟 + 工

艹 (cǎozìtóu) (the "grass" top) 一 十 艹 3 strokes

甫 fǔ 一 厂 门 冂 冃 甫 甫 7 strokes

缶 fǒu ノ 𠂉 𠂉 午 缶 缶 6 strokes

(14) 葡萄 pútao

葡 → 艹 + 勹 + 甫 12 strokes

萄 → 艹 + 勹 + 缶 11 strokes

酉 yǒu 一 丆 冂 両 两 西 酉 7 strokes

(15) 酒 jiǔ

酒 → 氵 + 酉 10 strokes

彡 (sānpiěr) (the "three-downward-strokes-to-the-left" side) ノ 彡 彡 3 strokes

(16) 参加 cānjiā (參加)

参 → 厶 + 大 + 彡 8 strokes

(17) 宋华 Sòng Huá (宋華)

宋 → 宀 + 木 7 strokes

华 → 化 + 十 6 strokes

丬 丨 丬 丬 3 strokes

(18) 北京 Běijīng

北 → 丬 + 匕 5 strokes

京 → 亠 + 口 + 小 8 strokes

夬 (juézìpáng) (the "decision" side) ㇇ コ 夬 夬 4 strokes

(19) 快乐 kuàilè (快樂)

快 → 忄 + 夬 7 strokes

覀 (xīzìtóu) (the "west" top) 一 ㇇ 冂 襾 覀 覀 6 strokes

(20) 漂亮 piàoliang

漂 → 氵 + 覀 + 二 + 小 14 strokes

亮 → 亠 + 口 + 冖 + 几 9 strokes

(21) 烤鸭 kǎoyā (烤鴨)

烤 → 火 + 耂 + 丂 10 strokes

(丂: 一 丂)

鸭 → 甲 + 鸟 10 strokes

(甲: 冂 冂 日 日 甲; 鸟: ノ ㇇ 勹 鸟 鸟)

(22) 喝 hē

喝 → 口 + 日 + 勹 + 人 + 乚 12 strokes

(23) 寿面 shòumiàn (壽麵)

寿 → 耒 + 寸 7 strokes

(耒: 一 二 三 耒)

Bargaining for discounts in China can make shopping quite an experience! This lesson will show you how Chinese currency is used. Now is a chance to talk more about yourself: you will learn how to describe your likes, interests, and hobbies. You will also learn what to do when you can't think of the right thing to say.

第十课 Lesson 10

我 在 这儿 买 光盘
Wǒ zài zhèr mǎi guāngpán

一、课文 Text





王小云：大为，你 在 这儿 买 什么？
Wáng Xiǎoyún：Dàwéi，nǐ zài zhèr mǎi shénme?

马大为：我 买 音乐 光盘。
Mǎ Dàwéi：Wǒ mǎi yīnyuè guāngpán.

王小云：你 常常 来 这儿 吗？
Wáng Xiǎoyún：Nǐ chángcháng lái zhèr ma?

马大为：我 不 常 来 这儿。星期天 我 常常 跟 林 娜 去 小 商场。这 个 商场 很 大。[1]
Mǎ Dàwéi：Wǒ bù cháng lái zhèr. Xīngqītiān wǒ chángcháng gēn Lín Nà qù xiǎo shāngchǎng. Zhè ge shāngchǎng hěn dà.

王小云：你 喜欢 什么 音乐？
Wáng Xiǎoyún：Nǐ xǐhuan shénme yīnyuè?



马大为：我 喜欢 中国 音乐。
Mǎ Dàwéi：Wǒ xǐhuan Zhōngguó yīnyuè.
这 张 光盘 怎么样？
Zhè zhāng guāngpán zěnmeyàng?

王小云：这 张 很 好，是《梁 祝》，很 有名。
Wáng Xiǎoyún：Zhè zhāng hěn hǎo, shì《Liáng Zhù》, hěn yǒumíng.

马大为：好，我 买 这 张。这儿有 没有 书 和 报？
Mǎ Dàwéi：Hǎo, wǒ mǎi zhè zhāng. Zhèr yǒu méiyǒu shū hé bào?

王小云：这儿 没有 书，也 没有 报。
Wáng Xiǎoyún：Zhèr méiyǒu shū, yě méiyǒu bào.

马大为：本子 呢？
Mǎ Dàwéi：Běnzi ne?

王小云：有，在 那儿买。跟 我 来，我 也 买 本子。
Wáng Xiǎoyún：Yǒu, zài nàr mǎi. Gēn wǒ lái, wǒ yě mǎi běnzi.

生词 New Words

*1.	在	Prep	zài	at; in; on 在家，在学院，在这儿
2.	光盘	N	guāngpán	CD 一张光盘
3.	音乐	N	yīnyuè	music 音乐光盘，中国音乐，外国音乐
4.	商场	N	shāngchǎng	market; bazaar; shopping mall 在商场，进商场
	商	N	shāng	trade; commerce
5.	常常	Adv	chángcháng	often 常常来，常常去，常常看，常常做
	常	Adv	cháng	often 不常
6.	跟	Prep/V	gēn	with/to follow 跟他来，跟林娜去，跟我学
7.	有名	A	yǒumíng	famous 有名的教授，有名的医生
8.	书	N	shū	book 外语书，汉语书，有名的书，看书
9.	报	N	bào	newspaper 买报，看报
10.	本子	N	běnzi	notebook 一个本子，买本子
11.	那儿	Pr	nàr	there 去那儿，在那儿
12.	梁祝	PN	Liáng Zhù	(name of a Chinese violin concerto)



(二)

师傅：先生，您 要 什么？②
Shīfu: Xiānsheng, nín yào shénme?

丁 力波：你 好，师傅。③ 请问，这 是 什么？
Dīng Lìbō: Nǐ hǎo, shīfu. Qǐngwèn, zhè shì shénme?

【解决语言困难】
Solving language problems

师傅：您 不 认识 吗？这 是 香蕉苹果。
Shīfu: Nín bú rènshi ma? Zhè shì xiāngjiāopíngguǒ.

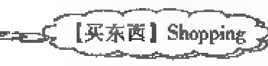
丁 力波：对不起，我 是 问：这 个 汉语 怎么 说？④
Dīng Lìbō: Duìbuqǐ, wǒ shì wèn: Zhè ge Hànyǔ zěnme shuō?

师傅：啊，您 是 外国 人。您 在 哪儿 工作？
Shīfu: À, nín shì wàiguó rén. Nín zài nǎr gōngzuò?

丁 力波：我 在 语言 学院 学习。
Dīng Lìbō: Wǒ zài Yǔyán Xuéyuàn xuéxí.

师傅：您 学习 汉语，是 不 是？⑤ 您 跟 我 学，很 容易：这 叫 香蕉，这 叫 香蕉苹果，这 也 是 苹果，那 是 葡萄……
Shīfu: Nín xuéxí Hànyǔ, shì bu shì? Nín gēn wǒ xué, hěn róngyì: Zhè jiào xiāngjiāo, zhè jiào xiāngjiāopíngguǒ, zhè yě shì píngguǒ, nà shì pútao…

丁 力波：香蕉、苹果、香蕉苹果……，一 斤 苹果 多少 钱？⑥
Dīng Lìbō: Xiāngjiāo, píngguǒ, xiāngjiāopíngguǒ…, yì jīn píngguǒ duōshao qián?



师傅：一 斤 三 块 二 毛 钱。⑦
Shīfu: Yì jīn sān kuài èr máo qián.

丁 力波：您 的 苹果 真 贵。
Dīng Lìbō: Nín de píngguǒ zhēn guì.

师傅：一 斤 三 块 二 不 贵。您 看，我 的 苹果 大。好，做 个 朋友，三 块 钱 一 斤。
Shīfu: Yì jīn sān kuài èr bú guì. Nín kàn, wǒ de píngguǒ dà. Hǎo, zuò ge péngyou, sān kuài qián yì jīn.

丁 力波：一斤 香蕉 多少 钱？
Dīng Lìbō: Yì jīn xiāngjiāo duōshao qián?

师傅：两 块 七 毛 五 分 一 斤，五 块 钱 两 斤。
Shīfu: Liǎng kuài qī máo wǔ fēn yì jīn, wǔ kuài qián liǎng jīn.

丁 力波：我 买 三 斤 香蕉 和 两 斤 香蕉苹果。
Dīng Lìbō: Wǒ mǎi sān jīn xiāngjiāo hé liǎng jīn xiāngjiāopíngguǒ.

师傅：一共 十四 块 钱。再 送 您 一 个 苹果。您 还 要 什么？
Shīfu: Yígòng shísì kuài qián. Zài sòng nín yí ge píngguǒ. Nín hái yào shénme?

丁力波：不 要 了，谢谢。⑧ 给 你 钱。
Dīng Lìbō: Bú yào le, xièxie. Gěi nǐ qián.

师傅：好，您 给 我 二十 块 钱，我 找 您 六 块 钱。再见。
Shīfu: Hǎo, nín gěi wǒ èrshí kuài qián, wǒ zhǎo nín liù kuài qián. Zàijiàn.

丁 力波：再见！
Dīng Lìbō: Zàijiàn!

生词 New Words

*1. 先生	N	xiānsheng	Mr.; sir	张先生，王先生
*2. 要	V	yào	to want	要什么，要音乐光盘
3. 师傅	N	shīfu	master worker	张师傅，王师傅
4. 香蕉苹果	N	xiāngjiāopíngguǒ	apple with a banana taste	一个香蕉苹果
香蕉	N	xiāngjiāo	banana	买香蕉

苹果	N	píngguǒ	apple 一个苹果
*5. 对不起	IE	duìbuqǐ	I'm sorry
6. 怎么	QPr	zěnme	how 怎么说，怎么做，怎么去，怎么介绍
7. 容易	A	róngyì	easy 很容易，不容易，真容易，不太容易
8. 葡萄	N	pútao	grape
9. 钱	N	qián	money 多少钱
10. 斤	M	jīn	(measure word of weight,equal to 500g) 一斤苹果，两斤葡萄
11. 块(钱)	M	kuài(qián)	(measure word of basic Chinese monetary unit, equal to 10 毛); dollar 两块钱，十二块钱，二十块钱
12. 毛(钱)	M	máo(qián)	(measure word of Chinese monetary unit, equal to 1/10 块); dime 两毛钱，六毛钱
*13. 贵	A	guì	expensive,precious 很贵，真贵，不太贵，不贵
*14. 做	V	zuò	to be; to make 做个朋友，做好朋友
15. 分(钱)	M	fēn(qián)	(measure word of Chinese monetary unit, equal to 1/100 块); cent 一分钱，八分钱
16. 送	V	sòng	to give(as a present) 送蛋糕，送葡萄酒
17. 给	V	gěi	to give 给他，给师傅，给我，给香蕉
18. 找(钱)	V	zhǎo(qián)	to give change 找钱

补充生词 Supplementary Words

1. 元	M	yuán	(the same as "块", but used in written language)
2. 笔	N	bǐ	pen
3. 支	M	zhī	(measure word for stick-like things such as pens)
4. 份	M	fèn	(measure word for publications such as newspapers)
5. 本	M	běn	(measure word for books and notebooks)
6. 杯	M	bēi	cup of
7. 售货员	N	shòuhuòyuán	shop assistant; salesperson
8. 作家	N	zuòjiā	writer
9. 便宜	A	piányi	cheap; inexpensive
10. 书店	N	shūdiàn	book store
11. 体育馆	N	tǐyùguǎn	gym
12. 卖	V	mài	to sell

二、注释 Notes

① 这个商场很大。

When the demonstrative pronoun "这" or "那" is used as an attributive, a measure word is generally inserted between it and the noun it modifies. For instance: "这张光盘", "那个朋友", "那瓶酒".

② 先生,您要什么?

In addition to being used as a general form of address for a male adult, "先生" can be used as a title of respect to address a senior scholar or specialist, regardless of sex. Sometimes a woman also uses "我先生" to refer to her husband.

The two expressions "您要什么?", "您还要什么?", are commonly used to ask what someone wants. Shop clerks or hotel attendants often use these phrases when offering help to customers.

③ 你好,师傅。

"师傅" is a respectful form of address for workers, and people in the service trades. It may be used to address taxi and bus drivers, ticket sellers, cooks, and hotel staff. There is a tendency now to increase the range of its usage. Sometimes the people mentioned above also use it to address people of other trades and professions.

④ 我是问:这个汉语怎么说?

"I am asking how to say this in Chinese. (What is this in Chinese?)"

"怎么+ VP" is often used to ask about the ways one should act or how one should do something. "怎么" is an adverbial, modifying verbs. For example: "怎么说?""怎么做?""怎么去?""怎么介绍?"

⑤ 您学习汉语,是不是?

"…,是不是?" (or "…,是吗?") is a sentence pattern we use to express opinion or speculation, with the expectation of a response from the listener. The affirmative answer to this question is "是啊!", and the negative answer is "不(是)". For example:

A: 你喜欢中国音乐,是吗?

B: 是啊。

⑥ 一斤苹果多少钱?

"How much is one *jin* of apples?"

"一斤…多少钱?" is a common sentence pattern we use to ask the price of something when shopping. This is a sentence with the noun phrase as the predicate. The predicate "多少钱" is placed immediately after the subject "一斤苹果". Note that the first part (the subject) and the second part (the predicate) can be inverted. We may also say:

A: 多少钱一斤(苹果)?

B: 三块二一斤。

Although the official Chinese system of weights and measures stipulates that "公斤 (gōngjīn, kilo)" is the basic unit, people are still accustomed to using the "斤", which is equivalent to half a kilogram.

In a super market or department store, people do not usually bargain over the price, but when shopping in a free market or at a stall, they frequently bargain.

⑦ 一斤三块二毛钱。

The various monetary units in 人民币 (Rénmínbì), the Chinese currency are: "元 (yuán)", "角 (jiǎo)", and "分 (fēn)". In spoken Chinese, we often use "块 (kuài)" for "元", and "毛 (máo)" for "角". When "毛" or "分" is at the end, "毛钱" and "分钱" can be omitted. For example:

1.75元 —— 一块七毛五(分钱)

4.80元 —— 四块八(毛钱)

Note: When "2毛" is at the beginning of an amount of money, people say "两毛". When "2分" is at the end of an amount of money, the expression "二分" is often used. For example:

0.22元—— 两毛二(分)

⑧ 不要了,谢谢。

"No, thanks."

三. 练习与运用 Drills and Practice

KEY SENTENCES

1. 这个商场很大。
2. 一斤香蕉多少钱?
3. 两块七毛五一斤。
4. 您在哪儿工作?
5. 我常常跟他来这儿。
6. 我送你一个苹果。
7. 您给我二十块钱。
8. 这个汉语怎么说?

1. 熟读下列词组 Master the following phrases

(1) 这张光盘　这个学生　这个人　这个学院　这个苹果　这个蛋糕

那张名片　那个朋友　那个小姐　那个系　那个学生　那瓶酒

哪张照片　哪个老师　哪个先生　哪个专业　哪个苹果　哪个本子

(2) 买光盘　送名片　给钱　吃寿面　看书　做工作　认识你　喜欢音乐

买苹果　给照片　找钱　喝酒　看报　学专业　给他　学习汉语

(3) 在中国学习　在外国工作　在这儿买书　在那儿看报　在商场工作

跟我来　跟他去　跟我学　跟老师说汉语　跟朋友去商场

2. 句型替换 Pattern drills

(1) A: 你在哪儿学习?

B: 我在音乐学院学习。

A: 你学习什么专业?

B: 我学习音乐专业。

A: 你忙不忙?

B: 我很忙。

中文系	文学
美术学院	美术
外语学院	外语

(2) A: 你爸爸在哪儿工作?

B: 他在北京工作。

A: 他做什么工作?

B: 他是教授。

A: 他好吗?

B: 谢谢你,他很好。

商场	售货员(shòuhuòyuán)
北京	作家(zuòjiā)
学院	医生

(3) A: 星期天你常常去哪儿?

B: 星期天我常常去商场。

A: 你跟谁去商场?

B: 我跟林娜去商场。

书店(shūdiàn)	我朋友
体育馆(tǐyùguǎn)	马大为
烤鸭店(kǎoyādiàn)	我弟弟

(4) A: 他送他朋友什么？
B: 他送他朋友一张光盘。
A: 这张光盘怎么样？
B: 这张光盘很贵。

一个大蛋糕	漂亮
一瓶葡萄酒	便宜(piányi)
一本书	有意思

(5) A: 他给谁二十块钱？
B: 他给师傅二十块钱。

一张名片	力波
一张照片	老师
一个本子	妹妹
一本外语书	弟弟

(6) A: 您买什么？
B: 我买两斤葡萄。一共多少钱？
A: 一共五块钱。

两瓶酒	79.8 元
三支(zhī)笔(bǐ)	7.35 元
一本书和一份(fèn)报	12.60 元

(7) A: 这个师傅的葡萄大不大？
B: 这个师傅的葡萄不大，
那个师傅的葡萄大。

外语系的学生	多	汉语系的学生
这课	容易	那课
这儿的烤鸭	贵	那儿的烤鸭
这张照片	漂亮	那张照片

3. 跟你的同学口头作下面的练习 Practice the following exercises verbally with one classmate

A game of giving change

E.g. A：一共3.24元，我给您5元。 B：我找您1.76元。
→ A：一共三块两毛四，我给您五块。 B：我找您一块七毛六。
(1) A：一共7.69元，我给您8元。 B：我找您________。
(2) A：一共13.12元，我给您15元。 B：我找您________。
(3) A：一共22.78元，我给您30元。 B：我找您________。
(4) A：一共31.49元，我给您50元。 B：我找您________。
(5) A：一共84.92元，我给您100元。 B：我找您________。

4. 根据下列陈述句用疑问代词提问题 Change the following declarative sentences into questions with interrogative pronouns

(1) 这个商场很有名。(Ask two questions)
(2) 一斤葡萄两块七毛钱。(Ask three questions)
(3) 他送我三瓶酒。(Ask four questions)
(4) 我哥哥在商场卖(mài)光盘。(Ask five questions)
(5) 林娜常常跟宋华学习汉语。(Ask six questions)

5. 会话练习 Conversation practice

【喜欢不喜欢 Likes and dislikes】

(1) A：你喜欢什么专业？
B：我喜欢____________。
A：你喜欢哪国文学？
B：我喜欢____________文学。
____________有很多有名的作家。
(2) A：你喜欢不喜欢哲学(zhéxué)？
B：我____________哲学，我喜欢历史。
A：历史很有意思，我哥哥也学历史专业。
(3) A：这本书怎么样？
B：这本书不太好。你喜欢不喜欢？
A：我也不太喜欢。

【买东西 Shopping】

(1) A：您买什么？
B：师傅，有好的葡萄吗？
A：有，这都是。
B：____________？
A：两块五一斤。您要多少？
B：我要四斤。
A：____________。您给我五十，我找____________。

(2) A：小姐，这儿有本子吗？

B：有。您看，都在这儿。

A：多少钱一本？

B：这本＿＿＿＿＿＿，那本＿＿＿＿＿＿。您要哪本？

A：哪个本子好？

B：都很好。

A：好，我都要，买两本。

B：一共＿＿＿＿＿＿。您给我二十，我找您两毛。

(3) A：先生，您要什么？

B：我要一杯(bēi)咖啡(kāfēi)。

A：还要什么？

B：不要了，谢谢。

【解决语言困难 Solving language problems】

(1) A：请问，这个汉语怎么说？

B：对不起，我也不知道。

C：这叫词典(cídiǎn)，汉语词典。

A：谢谢。

(2) A：老师，"cheap"汉语怎么说？

B：便宜(piányi)，这个本子很便宜。

(3) A：今年是马年，你属什么？

B：对不起，请您再说一遍(yí biàn)。

6. **看图会话 Make a dialogue based on the picture**

【介绍与认识 Introducing and identifying people】

(1) A：你们认识吗？我来介绍一下。

这是＿＿＿＿＿＿，

这是＿＿＿＿＿＿。

B：认识你很高兴。

C：认识你，我也很高兴。



(2) 请问您贵姓？

请问您叫什么名字？

我们认识一下：

我姓＿＿＿＿，叫＿＿＿＿。

我的中文名字叫＿＿＿＿。

您是哪国人？

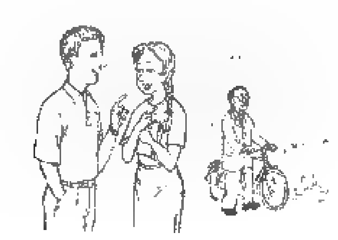
您是哪儿人？

您是我们学院的老师吗？

请问你是不是＿＿＿＿？

【询问 Enquiring】

(1)



那是谁？

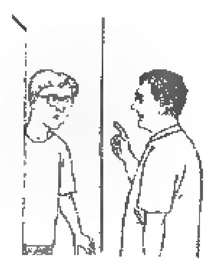
他是＿＿＿＿吗？

他是谁？

他是不是＿＿＿＿？

(2) 请问学生宿舍在哪儿？

丁力波住几层几号？



丁力波在吗？

他不在。

他现在在哪儿？

他在＿＿＿＿＿＿。

7. **交际练习 Communication exercises**

1) Talk to your classmate about what you like or dislike.

2) Your classmate is a salesperson in a store and you are a customer.

四. 阅读和复述 Reading Comprehension and Paraphrasing

马大为星期天常常跟林娜去商场。那个商场很大，东西(dōngxi, things)也很多。他们在那儿买音乐光盘，王小云也在。马大为喜欢中国音乐。他问王小云，什么音乐光盘好？王小云说《梁祝》很有名，外国朋友也喜欢。马大为很高兴，说："好，我买这张光盘。"马大为还要买书和报，这个商场不卖(mài)书，也不卖报。他跟王小云去买本子和笔(bǐ)。

马大为还常常去书店(shūdiàn)。那个书店也很大,书很多。他在书店买书,也看书。中国书不贵。下月二十号是他弟弟的生日。他弟弟喜欢中国功夫(gōngfu),马大为要送弟弟一本《中国功夫》。

五. 语法 Grammar

1. 介词词组 Prepositional Phrase

In Lesson 5 the verb "在" was studied. "在" is also a preposition. When combined with words expressing location (usually a noun or phrase), it forms a prepositional phrase. It is used before the predicative verb to indicate the location of an action.

在 + PW + V O

Subject	*Predicate*		
	Prep "在" + N	**V**	**O**
我	在 这儿	买	光盘。
您	在 哪儿	工作?	
他	不 在 语言学院	学习。	

The preposition "跟…" is often combined with a noun or pronoun after it to form a prepositional phrase and used in front of the predicative verb to indicate the manner of an action.

跟 + Pr/N (person) + V O

Subject	*Predicate*		
	Prep "跟" + Pr/N	**V**	**O**
我	跟 力波	来	这儿。
(你)	跟 我	来。	
您	跟 我	学。	

Note: The prepositional phrases "在…" and "跟…" must be placed before the verb. One cannot say "我学习在语言学院","你来跟我".

2. 双宾语动词谓语句(1) Sentences with double objects (1):给、送

Some verbs can take two objects, one in front, referring to people; the other, following, referring to things.

给/送 + Pr/N (person) + NP(thing)

Subject	*Predicate*		
	V	**Object 1**	**Object 2**
您	给	我	二十块钱。
我	找	您	十块钱。
(我)	送	您	一个苹果。

Note: Not all Chinese verbs can take double objects.

3. 形容词谓语句和副词"很" The adverb "很" in sentences with an adjectival predicate

Many sentences with an adjectival predicate have been studied so far. In this kind of sentence, an adjective follows the subject directly and does not need the verb "是". If there are no other adverbs such as "真", "太" or "不" before the adjective, the adverb "很" is usually placed before it.

S + 很 + A

我很好。

我今天很忙。

这个商场很大。

In this kind of sentence, if the adjective does not have an adverb before it, the sentence has the meaning of comparison. For example:

我忙,他不忙。

我的本子大。(他的本子小。)

The meaning of "很" here is not so obvious. "我很忙" and "我忙" are not much different in degree. In V/A-not-V/A questions, "很" cannot be used. For example: "他高兴不高兴?" One cannot say "他很高兴不很高兴?"

六. 汉字 Chinese Characters

1. 汉字的结构(3) Structure of Chinese characters (3)

The top-bottom structure:

a. Equal top-bottom

1
2

男 是

b. Big top-small bottom

1
2

兴

1	2
3	

然

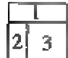
1	2
	3
4	



c. Small top-big bottom

1
2

家



宿

d. Equal top-middle-bottom

1
2
3

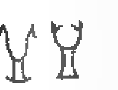
意 贵

2. 认写基本汉字 Learn and write basic Chinese characters

(1) 舟 ′ 丿 ⺆ 舟 舟 舟
zhōu boat 6 strokes



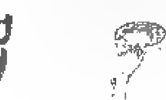

(2) 皿 丨 冂 罒 皿 皿
mǐn house hold utensiles 5 strokes




(3) 乐(樂) 一 二 乐 乐 乐
yuè music 5 strokes




(4) 足 丨 口 口 口 早 𧾷 足
zú foot 7 strokes



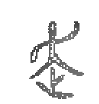
(5) 书(書) 乛 马 书 书
shū book 4 strokes



(6) 本 
běn root of a tree 5 strokes
(The "—" at the bottom of "木" indicates the root.)

(7) 平 一 二 三 立 平
píng flat 5 strokes

(8) 走 一 十 土 丰 丰 走 走
zǒu to walk 7 strokes
(The ancient character looks like a person running.)




(9) 己 乛 コ 己
jǐ oneself 3 strokes

(10) 穴 丶 丷 宀 宂 穴
xué cave 5 strokes



(11) 勿 丿 勹 勺 勿
wù do not 4 strokes

(12) 金 丿 人 스 仐 今 全 𠆢 金
jīn gold 8 strokes

(13) 斤 ′ 厂 斤 斤
jīn (measure word) 4 strokes
(The ancient character resembles an axe. It is used as a unit of weight now.)

(14) 毛 ′ 二 三 毛
máo (dime) 4 strokes

(15) 戈 一 弋 戈 戈
gē an ancient weapon 4 strokes

3. 认写课文中的汉字 Learn and write the Chinese characters appearing in the texts

(1) 光盘 guāngpán（光盤）

光 → ⺌ + 兀　6 strokes

盘 → 舟 + 皿　11 strokes

(2) 音乐 yīnyuè（音樂）

音 → 立 + 日　9 strokes

扌 (tǔzìpáng) (On the left side of a character, the third stroke of "土" is written as an upward stroke. It is called the "earth" side.) 一 十 扌　3 strokes

𠃓 (chǎngzìbiān) (the "arena" side) 　3 strokes

(3) 商场 shāngchǎng（商場）

商 → 亠 + 丷 + 冂 + 八 + 口　11 strokes

场 → 土 + 𠃓　7 strokes

⺌ (chángzìtóu) (the "constant" top)　5 strokes

(4) 常常 chángcháng

常 → ⺌ + 口 + 巾　11 strokes

⻊ (zúzìpáng) (On the left side of a character, the seventh stroke in "足" is written as an upward stroke.)　7 strokes

(5) 跟 gēn

跟 → ⻊ + 艮　13 strokes

卩 (dān'ěrduo) (the "single-ear" side) 　2 strokes

(6) 报 bào（報）

报 → 扌 + 卩 + 又　7 strokes

刅 (liángzìjiǎo) (the "millet" corner) 　4 strokes

(7) 梁祝 Liáng Zhù

梁 → 氵 + 刅 + 木　11 strokes

𠂉 (tūwěiniú) (the "tail-less ox" top) 　4 strokes

(8) 先生 xiānsheng

先 → 𠂉 + 儿　6 strokes

(9) 要 yào

要 → 覀 + 女　9 strokes

(10) 师傅 shīfu（師傅）

傅 (fù) → 亻 + 甫 + 寸　12 strokes

(The meaning side is "亻", and the phonetic side is "甫".)

(11) 香蕉 xiāngjiāo

香 → 禾 + 日　9 strokes

蕉 → 艹 + 隹 + 灬　15 strokes

(12) 苹果 píngguǒ（蘋果）

苹 → 艹 + 平　8 strokes

(The meaning is indicated by "艹", and the pronunciation is indicated by "平".)

(13) 对不起 duìbuqǐ（對不起）

对 → 又 + 寸　5 strokes

起 → 走 + 己　10 strokes

(14) 容易 róngyì

容 → 宀 + 八 + 口　10 strokes

易 → 日 + 勿　8 strokes

钅(jīnzìpáng)(the "metal" side). (On the left side of a character, "金" is written as "钅".) ノ 𠂉 𠂉 𠂉 钅 5 strokes

(15) 钱 qián (錢)

钱 → 钅 + 一 + 戈 10 strokes

(16) 块 kuài (塊)

块 → 土 + 夬 7 strokes

(17) 分 fēn

分 → 八 + 刀 4 strokes

(To cut things in half with a knife.)

(18) 送 sòng

送 → 丷 + 天 + 辶 9 strokes

(19) 给 gěi (給)

给 → 纟 + 合 9 strokes

(20) 找 zhǎo

找 → 扌 + 戈 7 strokes

文化知识 Cultural Notes

Currency

The currency of the People's Republic of China is the *renminbi*, literally "people's currency", abbreviated as "RMB". The basic unit of the RMB is the *yuan* or *kuai*. One-tenth of a *yuan* is called a *jiao* or *mao*, and one one-hundredth of a *yuan* equals one *fen*. Chinese money is issued in paper notes as well as coins, in thirteen different denominations:

Bills: 100 *yuan*, 50 *yuan*, 20 *yuan*, 10 *yuan*, 5 *yuan*, 2 *yuan*, 1 *yuan*
5 *jiao*, 2 *jiao*, 1 *jiao*

Coins: 1 *yuan*, 5 *jiao*, 1 *jiao*, 5 *fen*, 2 *fen*, 1 *fen*





















By the end of this lesson, you will be able to ask the time, hail a taxi, ask whether something is allowed, and indicate your ability to accomplish tasks. We will pay special attention to how Chinese people respond to compliments.

第十一课 Lesson 11

我 会 说 一点儿 汉语
Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr Hànyǔ

一、课文 Text



(一)

【问时间】Asking about time

司机：小姐，您去哪儿？
Sījī：Xiǎojiě, nín qù nǎr?

林娜：我去语言学院。师傅，请问现在几点？
Lín Nà：Wǒ qù Yǔyán Xuéyuàn. Shīfu, qǐngwèn xiànzài jǐ diǎn?

司机：差一刻八点。您会说汉语啊！
Sījī：Chà yí kè bā diǎn. Nín huì shuō Hànyǔ a!

林娜：我会说一点儿汉语。[1] 我是学生，现在回学院上课。
Lín Nà：Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr Hànyǔ. Wǒ shì xuésheng, xiànzài huí xuéyuàn shàngkè.

司机：你们几点上课？
Sījī：Nǐmen jǐ diǎn shàngkè?

林娜：八点上课。师傅，我们八点能到吗？
Lín Nà：Bā diǎn shàngkè. Shīfu, wǒmen bā diǎn néng dào ma?

【表示能力】Expressing one's ability

司机：能到。您的汉语很好。
Sījī：Néng dào. Nín de Hànyǔ hěn hǎo.

林娜：哪里，我的汉语不太好。[2] 您会不会说英语？
Lín Nà：Nǎli, wǒ de Hànyǔ bú tài hǎo. Nín huì bu huì shuō Yīngyǔ?

司机：我不会说英语。我也喜欢外语，常常在家学点儿英语。
Sījī：Wǒ bú huì shuō Yīngyǔ. Wǒ yě xǐhuan wàiyǔ, chángcháng zài jiā xué diǎnr Yīngyǔ.

林娜：谁教您英语？
Lín Nà：Shéi jiāo nín Yīngyǔ?

司机：我孙女儿。
Sījī：Wǒ sūnnǚr.

林娜：真有意思。她今年几岁？
Lín Nà：Zhēn yǒu yìsi. Tā jīnnián jǐ suì?

司机：六岁。我的岁数太大了，学英语不容易。[3]
Sījī：Liù suì. Wǒ de suìshu tài dà le, xué Yīngyǔ bù róngyì.

林娜：您今年多大岁数？[4]
Lín Nà：Nín jīnnián duō dà suìshu?

司机：我今年五十二。语言学院到了。[5] 现在差五分八点，您还有五分钟。[6]
Sījī：Wǒ jīnnián wǔshí'èr. Yǔyán Xuéyuàn dào le. Xiànzài chà wǔ fēn bā diǎn, nín hái yǒu wǔ fēnzhōng.

林娜：谢谢，给您钱。
Lín Nà：Xièxie, gěi nín qián.

司机：您给我二十，找您五块四，OK？
Sījī：Nín gěi wǒ èrshí, zhǎo nín wǔ kuài sì, OK?

林娜：您会说英语！
Lín Nà：Nín huì shuō Yīngyǔ!

司机：我也会一点儿。拜拜！
Sījī:　Wǒ yě huì yìdiǎnr. Báibái!

林娜：拜拜！
Lín Nà: Báibái!

生词 New Words

1.	会	OpV	huì	[illegible] know how to, can　会说汉语
2.	(一)点儿	Nu-M	(yì)diǎnr	a little bit　会说一点儿汉语，喝一点儿酒
3.	司机	N	sījī	driver
4.	点(钟)	N	diǎn(zhōng)	o'clock　两点(钟)，八点(钟)
5.	差	V	chà	to be short of, lack
6.	刻	M	kè	quarter (of an hour)　一刻(钟)，差一刻八点
7.	回	V	huí	to return　回学院，回家，回中国，回北京
8.	上课	VO	shàngkè	to go to class (both students and teachers)
	上	V	shàng	to ascend; to go to　上汉语课，上文化课
9.	能	OpV	néng	can; be able to　能来上课
10.	到	V	dào	to arrive　到家，到学院，到商场，到北京
11.	哪里	IE	nǎli	no (an expression of modest denial)
12.	教	V	jiāo	to teach　教汉语，教文学
13.	英语	[illegible]	Yīngyǔ	English　会说一点儿英语，学习英语，上英语课
14.	孙女儿	N	sūnnǚr	granddaughter on son's side
	女儿	N	nǚ'ér	daughter
15.	岁数	N	suìshu	years (of age)　多大岁数
	数	N	shù	number
16.	还	Adv	hái	still　还有五分钟
17.	分	M	fēn	minute　八点五分，差五分八点
18.	拜拜	IE	báibái	bye-bye (transliteration)

(二)

丁力波：陈老师，马大为今天不能来上课。
Dīng lìbō:　Chén lǎoshī, Mǎ Dàwéi jīntiān bù néng lái shàngkè.

陈老师：他为什么不能来上课？
Chén lǎoshī: Tā wèishénme bù néng lái shàngkè?

丁力波：昨天是星期日，他上午去商场买东西，下午去朋友家玩儿。他晚上十一点半回学院，十二点写汉字，两点钟睡觉。现在他还没有起床。
Dīng Lìbō:　Zuótiān shì xīngqīrì, tā shàngwǔ qù shāngchǎng mǎi dōngxi, xiàwǔ qù péngyou jiā wánr. Tā wǎnshang shíyī diǎn bàn huí xuéyuàn, shí'èr diǎn xiě Hànzì, liǎng diǎn-zhōng shuìjiào. Xiànzài tā hái méiyǒu qǐchuáng.

陈老师：他应该来上课。
Chén lǎoshī: Tā yīnggāi lái shàngkè.

丁力波：老师，我能不能问您一个问题？
Dīng Lìbō:　Lǎoshī, wǒ néng bu néng wèn nín yí ge wèntí?

陈老师：可以。
Chén lǎoshī: Kěyǐ.

【表示允许或禁止】
Expressing permission or prohibition

丁力波：我们为什么八点上课？
Dīng Lìbō:　Wǒmen wèishénme bā diǎn shàngkè?

生词 New Words

1.	为什么	QPr	wèishénme	why
	为	Prep	wèi	for
2.	昨天	N	zuótiān	yesterday　昨天上午，昨天下午
3.	东西	N	dōngxi	things; objects　买东西，吃东西，送东西
4.	玩儿	V	wánr	to have fun, to play　去朋友家玩儿，跟朋友玩儿
*5.	晚上	N	wǎnshang	evening, night　昨天晚上，星期六晚上，[illegible]号晚上
	晚	A	wǎn	late　来晚了
6.	半	Nu	bàn	half　九点半，半天，半年，半个星期，半个月，半个苹果，半斤葡萄
7.	写	V	xiě	to write
8.	汉字	N	Hànzì	Chinese character　写汉字，一个汉字
	字	N	zì	character
9.	睡觉	VO	shuìjiào	to sleep　十一点睡觉，还没有睡觉
	睡	V	shuì	to sleep

10. 起床	VO	qǐchuáng	get up　六点起床，还没有起床
起	V	qǐ	to get up, to rise
床	N	chuáng	bed　一张床
11. 应该	OpV	yīnggāi	should; ought to　应该来，应该看，应该祝贺
该	OpV	gāi	should; ought to
12. 问题	N	wèntí	question　一个问题，问问题，有问题，没问题
13. 可以	OpV	kěyǐ	may　可以进来，可以问问题，可以去
14. 陈	PN	Chén	(a surname)

补充生词　Supplementary Words

1. 下课	VO	xiàkè	to get out of class; to finish class
2. 吃饭	VO	chīfàn	to eat (a meal)
3. 开车	VO	kāichē	to drive a car
4. 唱歌	VO	chànggē	to sing(a song)
5. 跳舞	VO	tiàowǔ	to dance
6. 回答	V	huídá	to answer
7. 礼物	N	lǐwù	gift; present
8. 打球	VO	dǎ qiú	to play ball
9. 打的	VO	dǎdī	to take a taxi
10. 吸烟	VO	xīyān	to smoke
11. 表	N	biǎo	watch
12. 难	A	nán	difficult

二、注释　Notes

① 我会说一点儿汉语。

"一点儿" is an indefinite measure word expressing the idea of a small amount, and i[s] used to modify a noun. When the context allows of no ambiguity, the noun it modifies ca[n] be omitted. For example:

A：您会说汉语啊！
B：我会说一点儿(汉语)。

When "一点儿" is not at the beginning of a sentence, "一" may be omitted. For example: "吃(一)点儿烤鸭"、"喝(一)点儿酒"、"看(一)点儿书".

② 哪里，我的汉语不太好。

"哪里" is actually an interrogative pronoun, and has the same meaning as "哪儿", but "哪里" here has a negative connotation. It is often used to express modesty when responding to praise. We can also use "是吗？" to express doubt. For example: "是吗？我的汉语不太好." Whether we use a word expressing negation or doubt, the purpose is to show a modest attitude toward other people's compliments. In Chinese culture this is regarded as an appropriate response.

③ 学英语不容易。

"It is not easy to learn English."

④ 您今年多大岁数？

This is a courteous way of asking the age of an elderly or senior person.

⑤ 语言学院到了。

"Here we are at the Language Institute."

⑥ 您还有五分钟。

"You still have five minutes."

One of the senses of "还" already learned is to make an additional remark. Another use of "还" is to express the continuation of a state or action. For example:

晚上十一点他还工作。(He is still working at eleven o'clock at night.)
他现在还不能看中文报。(He is still unable to read Chinese newspapers.)
他还没有起床。(He still hasn't got out of bed. /He is still in bed.)

三、练习与运用　Drills and Practice

KEY SENTENCES

1. 请问，现在几点？
2. 现在差五分八点，他还没有起床。
3. 你们几点上课？
4. 他昨天下午两点去朋友家玩儿。
5. 我会说一点儿汉语。
6. 他为什么不能来上课？
7. 他应该来。
8. 可以问您一个问题吗？

1. 熟读下列词语 Master the following phrases

(1) 会说汉语　会说英语　会写汉字　不会问问题　不会学习　不会工作

(2) 能来学院　能到商场　能回家　不能看中文书　不能上课　不能喝酒

(3) 可以进来　可以坐　可以认识一下
不可以看　不可以说英语　不可以问问题

(4) 应该起床　应该睡觉　应该工作　应该玩儿
不应该说　不应该问　不应该喝酒　不应该来

(5) 还没有起床　还没有睡觉　还没有写汉字
还不会说汉语　还不能看中文书　还不认识他

(6) 说点儿英语　吃点儿蛋糕　喝点儿葡萄酒
买点儿东西　看点儿书　有点儿时间

2. 句型替换 Pattern drills

(1) 现在几点?
现在七点四十。

8:30	9:58
10:05	12:15
3:28	5:45

(2) 你几点起床?
我六点十分起床。

下课(xiàkè)	11:50
吃饭(fàn)	12:15
写汉字	8:20
睡觉	10:50

(3) 你现在去哪儿?
我现在回学院。
你回学院做什么?
我回学院上课。

去商场	买东西
去朋友家	玩儿
回家	看爸爸妈妈

(4) 你今天下午有没有课?
有课。
你有什么课?
我有汉语课。
谁教你们汉语?
陈老师教我们汉语。

文化(wénhuà)	张教授
文学	王先生
美术	马老师
音乐	丁小姐

(5) 你会游泳(yóuyǒng)吗?
我会游泳。
你今天能游泳吗?
对不起,我今天不能游泳。

开车(kāichē)
打球(dǎ qiú)
跳舞(tiàowǔ)
唱歌(chànggē)

(6) 你能不能看中文报?
我现在还不能看中文报。
你为什么不能看中文报?
我的汉语还不太好。

学	中国历史
教	汉语
回答(huídá)	他的问题

(7) 现在可以问问题吗?
可以。

说	英语
回	家
看	书
坐	你的车(chē)

(8) 明天是不是林娜的生日?
是她的生日。
我们应该买点儿苹果。

吃	寿面
喝	葡萄酒
送	礼物(lǐwù)

3. 根据画线部分提出问题 Ask a question concerning the underlined words in each of the following sentences

(1) 现在七点三十八分。

(2) 他五点一刻回家。

(3) 二月二十二号是他的生日。

(4) 明天晚上八点他们有一个聚会。

4. 会话练习 Conversation practice

【问时间 Asking about time】

(1) A：请问,您的表(biǎo)现在几点?
B：＿＿＿＿＿＿,我的表快(kuài, fast)一点儿。
A：谢谢。

(2) A：今天晚上你有没有时间？

B：我有时间。

A：你来我家玩儿，好吗？

B：好啊。几点去？

A：________________，怎么样？

B：晚一点儿，________________好吗？

A：好。

【表示能力 Expressing one's ability】

(1) A：你会不会________________？

B：我会一点儿。

A：你能教我吗？

B：好，有时间我们去体育馆(tǐyùguǎn)练习。

(2) A：这个汉字怎么写？

B：对不起，我也不会。

(3) A：你现在能不能选修(xuǎnxiū)哲学(zhéxué)课？

B：我现在还________________。

A：为什么？

B：我的汉语还不太好。

【表示允许或禁止 Expressing permission or prohibition】

(1) A：可以进来吗？

B：对不起，请等(děng, to wait)一下。

(2) A：可以吸烟(xīyān)吗？

B：对不起，这儿不可以________________。

(3) A：老师，今天的课很难(nán)，我有问题，能不能问您？

B：可以。明天下午我有时间，你四点来，好吗？

A：好，谢谢。

5. 交际练习 Communication exercises

(1) Your classmate is a taxi driver, and you want to go to somewhere by taxi. How do you converse with the taxi driver?

(2) Your watch has stopped. How do you ask a passerby the time?

(3) You are talking about families with your friend. How do you ask him/her about the ages of his/her parents and about the children of his/her brothers and sisters?

(4) You are visiting somewhere and you want to find out whether or not you can take pictures (拍照，pāizhào) or smoke(吸烟，xīyān). How do you ask?

便条(biàntiáo, note)

小云，你好！

今天下午我来找你，你不在。明天晚上你有时间吗？我们有一个聚会，你能不能参加？七点我们去，好吗？再见。

林娜　十月四日

四. 阅读和复述 Reading Comprehension and Paraphrasing

星期日林娜到一个英国朋友家玩儿。星期一八点她有课，七点三刻她打的(dǎdī)回学院上课。这个司机今年五十二岁，他有一个孙女儿，今年六岁。他说林娜的汉语很好。他也喜欢外语，现在跟他孙女儿学英语。他们八点差五分到学院。

马大为星期天很忙。他上午去商场买东西，下午去朋友家玩儿，晚上很晚回学院。他十二点写汉字，两点钟睡觉。星期一八点上课，他八点十分还没有起床。陈老师很不高兴，她问丁力波：马大为在哪儿？丁力波说马大为现在还没有起床，他不能来上课。

五. 语法 Grammar

1. 钟点 Telling time

These words are used to tell time in Chinese: "点(钟)", "刻" and "分".

When telling someone the time the following rules apply:

2:00 两点(钟) (The "钟" in "点钟" can be omitted.)

2:05 两点(〇)五分 (When "分" is a number less than ten, "〇" may be added before it.)

2:10 两点十分

2:12 两点十二(分) (When "分" is more than 10, "分" may be omitted.)

2:15 两点一刻 or 两点十五(分)

2:30 两点半 or 两点三十(分)

2:45 两点三刻 or 差一刻三点 or 两点四十五(分)

2:55 差五分三点 or 两点五十五(分)

The order of time expressions and expressions of date is:

年 + 月 + 日 + 上午/下午/晚上 + 钟点

二〇〇二年 十二月 一日 星期日 晚上 八点二十五分

2000年 12月 1日 星期日 晚上 8:25

2. 能愿动词谓语句(1) Sentences with the optative verbs (1): "会", "能", "可以", "应该"

Optative verbs such as "会", "能", "可以", "应该", and "要" are often placed before verbs to express ability, possibility, or willingness.

Optative verbs such as "会", "能", and "可以" indicate the ability to do something and can be translated with the English word "can; be able to".

It should be noted, though, that "会" emphasizes skills acquired through learning, while "能" and "可以" express the possession of skills in general.

(不) + OpV + V O

Subject	*Predicate*			
	TW	OpV	V	O
你		会不会	说	汉语？
他		不会	打球。	
我		会	写	这个汉字。
谁		会	游泳？	
他孙女儿		能	教	他英语吗？
马大为	今天	能不能	学习？	
你朋友		能	喝	多少酒？
你		可以不可以	介绍一下	你们系？

"能" and "可以" are also be used to express permission or prohibition under specific circumstances. For example:

Subject	*Predicate*			
	TW	OpV	V	O
我们	八点	能不能	到	那儿？
我	明天	不能	上	课。
（我）		可以	进来	吗？
这儿		不可以	吃	东西。

The optative verb "应该" is used to express needs arising from moral or factual necessity.

Subject	*Predicate*		
	OpV	V	O
他	应该	来 上	课。
你	不应该	去	那儿。

Note: 1. In a sentence with an optative verb, the affirmative-negative form (V/A-not-V/A) is formed by juxtaposing the affirmative and negative forms of the optative verb, that is OpV-not-OpV.

OpV	+ 不	+ OpV	+ V	O
会	不	会	说	汉语
能	不	能	去	
可以	不	可以	介绍	

2. The negative form of "能" and "可以" is usually "不能". "不可以" is only used to express prohibition. For example: "不可以吸烟 (xīyān, smoke)". If the answer to the question "你可以不可以介绍一下你们系？" is negative, it should be "我不能介绍我们系." One cannot say "我不可以介绍我们系."

3. To answer briefly, one may use only the optative verb. For example:

你会说汉语吗？——不会。

可以进来吗？——可以。

4. Some of the optative verbs are also general verbs. For example:

他会英语。

我要咖啡。

3. 连动句(1):表示目的 Sentences with serial verb phrases (1): Purpose

In a sentence with a verbal predicate, the subject may take two consecutive verbs or verb phrases. The order of these verb phrases is fixed. In the sentences with serial verb phrases introduced in this chapter, the second verb indicates the purpose of the action denoted by the first verb.

S + V_1 O + V_2 O

Subject	*Predicate*				
	TW	V_1	O	V_2	O
我	现在	回	学院	上	课。
他	下午	去不去	朋友家	玩儿?	
他	下午	不去	朋友家	玩儿。	

4. 双宾语动词谓语(2) Sentences with double objects (2)："教"，"问"

Such verbs as "教" and "问" can take double objects.

Subject	*Predicate*		
	V	Object 1	Object 2
他孙女儿	教	他	英语。
哪个老师	教	你们	中国文化?
他	问	我	一个问题。
他	问	你	什么?

六. 汉字 Chinese Characters

1. 汉字的结构(4) Structure of Chinese characters (4)

The enclosure structure ①

a. Four-side enclosure

国 回

b. Left-top-right enclosure

用 问

c. Top-left enclosure

应 属

d. Top-left-bottom enclosure

医

e. Top-right enclosure

可 司

2. 认写基本汉字 Learn and write basic Chinese characters

(1) 占 丨 ⺊ 卜 占 占
zhàn to occupy 5 strokes

(2) 里(裏) 丨 冂 曰 日 甲 甲 里
lǐ inside 7 strokes

(3) 至 一 ㄗ 五 至 至 至
zhì to 6 strokes

(4) 央 丨 冂 口 央 央
yāng center 5 strokes

(5) 东(東) 一 𠂉 东 东 东
dōng east 5 strokes

(6) 西 一 丆 丙 丙 两 西
xī west 6 strokes

(7) 免 ノ ク 𠂊 々 色 免 免
miǎn be excused from 7 strokes

(8) 半 丶 丷 ⺷ 兰 半
bàn half 5 strokes

(9) 与(與) 一 与 与
yǔ and 3 strokes
(Please differentiate "与" from "马".)

(10) 页(頁) 一 丆 了 百 页 页
yè page 6 strokes

(11) 以 レ ㇾ 以 以
yǐ to use 4 strokes

3. 认写课文中的汉字 Learn and write the Chinese characters appearing in the texts

(1) 司机 sījī (司機)

司 → 𠃌 + 一 + 口　　5 strokes

机 → 木 + 几　　6 strokes

(2) 点钟 diǎnzhōng (點鐘)

点 → 占 + 灬　　9 strokes

钟 → 钅 + 中　　9 strokes

⺶ (piěwěiyáng) (the "slanting-tailed-goat" top) (On the top of a character, the vertical stroke in "羊" is written as a downward stroke to the left "丿".)

丶 丷 䒑 ⺶ ⺶ ⺶　　6 strokes

(3) 差 chà

差 → ⺶ + 工　　9 strokes

刂 (lìdāopáng) (On the right side of a multi-component character, "刀" is written as "刂". It is called the "standing knife" side.) 丨 刂　　2 strokes

亥 hài 丶 亠 亡 亥 亥 亥　　6 strokes

(4) 刻 kè

刻 → 亥 + 刂　　8 strokes

(5) 回 huí

回 → 囗 + 口　　6 strokes

(6) 能 néng

能 → 厶 + 月 + 匕 + 匕　　10 strokes

(7) 到 dào

到 → 至 + 刂　　8 strokes

(8) 英语 Yīngyǔ (英語)

英 → 艹 + 央　　8 strokes

(9) 孙女儿 sūnnǚr (孫女兒)

孙 → 子 + 小　　6 strokes

(10) 岁数 suìshu (歲數)

数 → 米 + 女 + 攵　　13 strokes

手 piěshǒu (the "slanting-hand" side) (On the left side of a character, the fourth stroke in "手" is written as "丿".) 一 二 三 手　　4 strokes

(11) 拜拜 báibái

拜 → 手 + 一 + 丰　　9 strokes

(12) 昨天 zuótiān

昨 → 日 + 乍　　9 strokes

(The "sun" side, "日", shows the character has a temporal connotation.)

(13) 玩儿 wánr (玩兒)

玩 → 王 + 元　　8 strokes

(14) 写 xiě (寫)

写 → 冖 + 与　　5 strokes

(15) 晚上 wǎnshang

晚 → 日 + 免　　11 strokes

(The "sun" side, "日", shows the character has a temporal connotation.)

垂 chuí (千 + 艹 + 一) 一 二 三 千 千 垂 垂 垂　　8 strokes

(16) 睡觉 shuìjiào (睡覺)

睡 → 目 + 垂　　14 strokes

(Please note the left side of the character is the "eye" side "目", not the "sun" side "日". "Sleeping" is related to the "eyes".)

觉 → ⺍ + 见　　　9 strokes

(The top of this character is the "study" top, not the "constant" top.)

(17) 起床 qǐchuáng (起牀)

床 → 广 + 木　　　7 strokes

(18) 应该 yīnggāi (應該)

应 → 广 + 业　　　7 strokes

该 → 讠 + 亥　　　8 strokes

(19) 问题 wèntí (問題)

题 → 是 + 页　　　15 strokes

(20) 陈 chén (陳)

陈 → 阝 + 东　　　7 strokes

文化知识 Cultural Notes

Loanwords

Like other languages, Chinese also borrows words from foreign languages. Most loanwords in Chinese come from English, French, Japanese, or Russian. They generally fall into five groups: First are interpretative translations or semantic equivalents. Both terms refer to using Chinese words to translate imported concepts. Words of this category usually do not appear noticeably foreign. One example is the word 电视 *dianshi* "television", in which 电 *dian* (originally "lightning", later "electricity") is freely adapted to correspond to the prefix "tele" (originally from the ancient Greek word meaning "far"), and 视 *shi* literally translates as "vision". The words 电话 *dianhua* "telephone", and 电报 *dianbao* "telegram" fall under the same category.

Second are transliterations, renditions that imitate the sound of the source word. The non-native origin stands out in this group of words, for example: 沙发 *shafa* "sofa", 咖啡 *kafei* "coffee", 可口可乐 *kekoukele* for "coca cola", and 夹克 *jiake* "jacket".

Third is a combination of the first and second modes described above: partly free paraphrasing/semantic matching, and partly transliteration. Examples can be found with 啤酒 *pijiu* "beer", 摩托车 *motuoche* "motorcycle", and 坦克车 *tankeche* "tank". While 啤 *pi* is the transliteration for "beer", 摩托 *motuo* for "motor", and 坦克 *tanke* for "tank"; 酒 *jiu* "alcoholic drink" and 车 *che* "vehicle" are translations.

Fourth are roman letters plus Chinese words, such as AA 制 *zhi* "go Dutch", BP 机 *ji* "pager", and B 超 *chao* "ultrasound". Fifth is the use of roman letters only, in a direct borrowing of acronyms, for example: "CD", "DVD", "CPU", and "DNA".

As a rule, loanwords are added to the Chinese lexicon only in cases where available Chinese expressions are inadequate to describe new concepts, situations, or other phenomena that arise when Chinese and foreign cultures interact. However, words like 拜拜 *baibai* "bye-bye" and "OK" do not represent new concepts and can be replaced by words of Chinese origin. Yet many people, especially the young, love such expressions precisely for their foreign flavour.

In China, what should you do if you don't feel well? Here you will learn how to describe health problems to a doctor. You will also learn how to express volition, indicate necessity, and learn a new way of asking questions.

第十二课 Lesson 12

我 全身 都 不舒服
Wǒ quánshēn dōu bù shūfu

一、课文 Text





丁 力波：大为，你 每 天 都 六点 起床 去 锻炼，[1]
Dīng Lìbō: Dàwéi, nǐ měi tiān dōu liù diǎn qǐchuáng qù duànliàn,

现在 九点 一刻，你 怎么 还 不 起床？[2]
xiànzài jiǔ diǎn yí kè, nǐ zěnme hái bù qǐchuáng?

马 大为：我 头 疼。
Mǎ Dàwéi: Wǒ tóu téng.

丁力波：你 嗓子 怎么样？
Dīng Lìbō: Nǐ sǎngzi zěnmeyàng?



马大为：我 嗓子 也 疼。
Mǎ Dàwéi: Wǒ sǎngzi yě téng.

丁力波：我 想，你 应该 去 医院 看病。[3]
Dīng Lìbō: Wǒ xiǎng, Nǐ yīnggāi qù yīyuàn kànbìng。

马大为：我 身体 没 问题，[4] 不用 去 看病。
Mǎ Dàwéi: Wǒ shēntǐ méi wèntí, búyòng qù kànbìng

【表示意愿】
Expressing one's desire

我 要 睡觉，不 想 去 医院。
wǒ yào shuìjiào, bù xiǎng qù yīyuàn.

丁力波：你 不 去 看病，明天 你 还 不 能 上课。
Dīng Lìbō: Nǐ bú qù kànbìng, míngtiān nǐ hái bù néng shàngkè.

马大为：好 吧。我 去 医院。[5] 现在 去 还是 下午 去？
Mǎ Dàwéi: Hǎo ba. Wǒ qù yīyuàn. Xiànzài qù háishi xiàwǔ qù?

丁力波：当然 现在 去，我 跟 你一起 去。[6]今天 天气 很
Dīng Lìbō: Dāngrán xiànzài qù, wǒ gēn nǐ yìqǐ qù. Jīntiān tiānqì hěn

冷，你 要 多 穿 点儿 衣服。
lěng, nǐ yào duō chuān diǎnr yīfu.



生词 New Words

1. 全身	N	quánshēn	all over (the body) 全身疼，全身不舒服
全	A	quán	whole
身	N	shēn	body
2. 舒服	A	shūfu	comfortable 不舒服，很舒服，舒服不舒服
3. 每	Pr	měi	every; each 每天，每年，每个学生，每瓶酒
4. 锻炼	V	duànliàn	to do physical exercise 去锻炼
5. 头	N	tóu	head
6. 疼	A	téng	painful 头疼，手疼
7. 嗓子	N	sǎngzi	throat 嗓子疼，嗓子不舒服

8. 想	V/OpV	xiǎng	to think/to want to do sth. 想睡觉，想喝水
9. 医院	N	yīyuàn	hospital 去医院，有一个医院
10. 看病	VO	kànbìng	to see a doctor 去看病，去医院看病
病	N/V	bìng	illness/to get sick 看病，有病，没有病
11. 身体	N	shēntǐ	body, health 身体好，锻炼身体
*12. 要	OpV	yào	must, to want to do something 要看病，要锻炼
13. 吧	MdPt	ba	(modal particle)
14. 还是	Conj	háishi	or 现在还是晚上，睡觉还是起床
15. 一起	Adv	yìqǐ	together 跟他一起，一起去，一起锻炼
16. 冷	A	lěng	cold 天气很冷
17. 穿	V	chuān	to wear
18. 衣服	N	yīfu	clothes 穿衣服，买衣服，做衣服

(二)

丁　力波：你 在 这儿休息一下，我 去 给 你 挂号。[7]
Dīng Lìbō: Nǐ zài zhèr xiūxi yíxià, wǒ qù gěi nǐ guàhào.

马　大为：好。
Mǎ Dàwéi: Hǎo.

医生：　8 号，8 号 是 谁？
Yīshēng: Bā hào, bā hào shì shéi?

丁　力波：我 是 8 号。
Dīng Lìbō: Wǒ shì bā hào.

医生：　你 看病 还是 他 看病？
Yīshēng: Nǐ kànbìng háishi tā kànbìng?

丁力波：他 看病。
Dīng Lìbō: Tā kànbìng.

医生：　请 坐 吧。你 叫 马 大为，是 不 是？
Yīshēng: Qǐng zuò ba. Nǐ jiào Mǎ Dàwéi, shì bu shì?

马大为：是，我 叫 马 大为。
Mǎ Dàwéi: Shì, wǒ jiào Mǎ Dàwéi.

医生：　你 今年 多 大？
Yīshēng: Nǐ jīnnián duō dà?

马　大为：我 今年 二十二 岁。
Mǎ Dàwéi: Wǒ jīnnián èrshí'èr suì.

【看病】Going to see a doctor

医生：　你 哪儿 不 舒服？[8]
Yīshēng: Nǐ nǎr bù shūfu?

马　大为：我 头 疼，全身 都 不 舒服。
Mǎ Dàwéi: Wǒ tóu téng, quánshēn dōu bù shūfu.

医生：　我 看 一下。你 嗓子 有点儿 发炎，[9] 还 有点儿 发烧，是 感冒。
Yīshēng: Wǒ kàn yíxià. Nǐ sǎngzi yǒudiǎnr fāyán, hái yǒudiǎnr fāshāo, shì gǎnmào.

丁　力波：他 要 不 要 住院？
Dīng Lìbō: Tā yào bu yào zhùyuàn?

医生：　不用。你 要 多 喝 水，还 要 吃 点儿 药。你 愿意 吃 中药 还是 愿意 吃 西药？
Yīshēng: Búyòng. Nǐ yào duō hē shuǐ, hái yào chī diǎnr yào. Nǐ yuànyì chī zhōngyào háishi yuànyì chī xīyào?

马　大为：我 愿意 吃 中药。
Mǎ Dàwéi: Wǒ yuànyì chī zhōngyào.

医生：　好，你 吃 一点儿 中药，下 星期一 再 来。
Yīshēng: Hǎo, nǐ chī yìdiǎnr zhōngyào, xià xīngqīyī zài lái.

生词 New Words

1. 休息	V	xiūxi	to take a rest 休息一下，应该休息
*2. 给	Prep	gěi	to; for 给他买，给他介绍，给我们上课
3. 挂号	VO	guàhào	to register (at a hospital, etc.) 给他挂号
号	N	hào	number 八号，四九二号
4. 有点儿	Adv	yǒudiǎnr	somewhat; rather; a bit 有点儿疼，有点儿不舒服
5. 发炎	VO	fāyán	to become inflamed 有点儿发炎
6. 发烧	VO	fāshāo	to have a fever 有点儿发烧
烧	V	shāo	to burn
7. 感冒	V/N	gǎnmào	to have a cold/cold 有点儿感冒
8. 住院	VO	zhùyuàn	to be in hospital; to be hospitalized

9. 水	N	shuǐ	water 喝水
10. 药	N	yào	medicine 吃药，买药
11. 愿意	OpV	yuànyì	to be willing to do sth. 愿意学习，愿意上课，不愿意
12. 中药	N	zhōngyào	traditional Chinese medicine
13. 西药	N	xīyào	Western medicine
西	N	xī	west

补充生词 Supplementary Words

1. 牙	N	yá	tooth
2. 肚子	N	dùzi	abdomen;stomach
3. 开刀	VO	kāidāo	to have an operation
4. 化验	V	huàyàn	to have a medical test
5. 血	N	xiě	blood
6. 大便	N	dàbiàn	stool
7. 小便	N	xiǎobiàn	urine
8. 打针	VO	dǎzhēn	to have an injection
9. 热	A	rè	hot
10. 凉快	A	liángkuai	cool
11. 生活	N	shēnghuó	life
12. 英文	N	Yīngwén	English

二、注释 Notes

① 你每天都六点起床去锻炼。

When the pronoun “每” modifies a noun, a measure word should be used before the noun it modifies as in the following examples: “每个学生”，“每斤苹果”. However, before the nouns “天” and “年” a measure word cannot be used, and measure words are optional before “月”. For example, we say “每天”，“每年”，and say either “每月” or “每个月”. “每” is often used in combination with “都”. For example:

他每天都来学院。

我每月都回家。

② 你怎么还不起床?

“Why are you still in bed? ”

“怎么” can also be used to ask about the cause of something, and the difference between “怎么” and “为什么” is that the former indicates a sense of surprise on the part of the speaker. For example:

八点上课，你怎么八点半来?

今天天气很好，你怎么不去锻炼?

Note: “怎么” and “怎么样” are both interrogative pronouns, but “怎么” is often used as an adverbial in a sentence, whereas “怎么样” usually functions as the predicate as in “你怎么样? ”. When asking the reason for something, “怎么样” cannot be used and so one could not say “你怎么样还不起床? ”

③ 我想，你应该去医院看病。

“I think you must go to see a doctor.”

In this sentence “想” is a common verb.

④ 我身体没问题。

“No problem with my health.”

“身体” means “body”, but it may also mean “health”. “你身体怎么样? ” is also a form of greeting among friends and acquaintances. The phrase “没问题” means “no problem” and it is often used in spoken Chinese to indicate an affirmative, confident attitude. For example:

A：明天你能来吗?

B：没问题！我能来。

⑤ 好吧。我去医院。

The modal particle “吧” has many uses. It is used to soften the tone of speech here and it may also be used in sentences expressing requests, commands, persuasion and consultation. For example:

请吧。 请坐吧。 我问一下吧。

⑥ 我跟你一起去。

“I'll go with you.”

When the prepositional phrase “跟+Pr/NP” is placed before a verb as an adverbial modifier, it is generally used with the adverb “一起”; together they form the phrase “跟+Pr/NP+一起”. For example:

他跟他朋友一起做练习。

他跟宋华一起锻炼。

⑦ 我去给你挂号。

"给" is a verb (see Lesson Ten), but it can also function as a preposition. When used as a preposition, "给" and the noun or noun phrase that follows it (usually the receiver of the action's benefit) form a prepositional phrase, which is placed before the predicative verb indicating that the object of "给" is indirectly affected by the activity of the predicate.

⑧ 你哪儿不舒服?

"What's wrong with you?"

This is an everyday expression used by doctors when talking to their patients.

⑨ 你嗓子有点儿发炎。

The phrase "有(一)点儿" (with "一" often omitted) is used before certain adjectives or verbs as an adverbial modifier, indicating moderation. When used before an adjective, it often implies dissatisfaction or negation. For example:

有点儿不高兴　有点儿贵　有点儿晚　有点儿发烧

Note: There is some difference between "有一点儿" and "一点儿". "有一点儿" is used adverbially, modifying the adjective or verb that follows it, whereas "一点儿" is used as an attributive, modifying a noun. For example:

一点儿东西　一点儿钱　一点儿书

The construction "一点儿 + N" is usually placed after a verb as its object. For example:

我去买一点儿东西。

It is not permissible to replace "有一点儿" with "一点儿". For example:

他有点儿不高兴。(We cannot say "他一点儿不高兴".)

我有点儿发烧。(We cannot say "我一点儿发烧".)

三. 练习与运用　Drills and practice

KEY SENTENCES

1. 你怎么还不起床?
2. 我头疼,有点儿发烧。
3. 我跟你一起去。
4. 我要睡觉,不想去看病。
5. 他要不要住院?
6. 你愿意吃中药还是愿意吃西药?
7. 今天天气很冷,要多穿点儿衣服。
8. 我身体没问题,不用去看病。

1. 熟读下列词组 Master the following phrases

(1) 头疼　手疼　全身疼　学习很好　身体不太好　天气很冷

(2) 下午还是晚上　今天还是明天　两点还是三点
你还是我　他们还是她们　老师还是学生
睡觉还是起床　工作还是休息　学习还是玩儿
认识还是不认识　买衣服还是买本子　吃中药还是吃西药
要香蕉还是要苹果　学习语言还是学习文学　喜欢香蕉还是喜欢苹果

(3) 要喝水　要回家　想认识他
想看京剧(jīngjù)　不想吃　不想学美术

(4) 愿意参加　愿意写汉字　愿意学习汉语
不愿意喝酒　不愿意住院　不愿意起床

(5) 要看病　要挂号　要锻炼　要不要吃药　不用介绍　不用找钱

2. 句型替换 Pattern drills

(1) A: 你想不想学习音乐?
B: 我很想学习音乐。

去	加拿大
认识	陈老师
看	京剧(jīngjù)

(2) A: 现在五点,你要学习还是要锻炼?
B: 我要锻炼。
A: 我不想锻炼,我要学习。

回家	去商场
看书	写汉字
去买衣服	去买苹果
看中文报	看英文(Yīngwén)报

(3) A: 你愿意吃中药还是愿意吃西药?
B: 我愿意吃中药。你呢?
A: 我愿意吃西药。

吃蛋糕	吃寿面
学习语言	学习文学
去游泳(yóuyǒng)	去打球(dǎ qiú)
今天去	明天去
两点来	两点半来

(4) A: 医生,他要不要住院?
B: 不用。

开刀(kāidāo)	不用
化验(huàyàn)血(xiě)	要
化验(huàyàn)大便(dàbiàn)	不用
化验(huàyàn)小便(xiǎobiàn)	要

(5) A: 现在是八点一刻，你怎么还不起床？
B: 我不太舒服。
A: 你哪儿不舒服？
B: 我头有点儿疼。

9:30	去上课	嗓子
4:20	锻炼	牙(yá)
11:45	睡觉	肚子(dùzi)

(6) A: 你常常去看你朋友吗？
B: 我常常去看他。
A: 他身体怎么样？
B: 他身体没问题。

工作	有点儿忙
学习	不太好
生活(shēnghuó)	很快乐

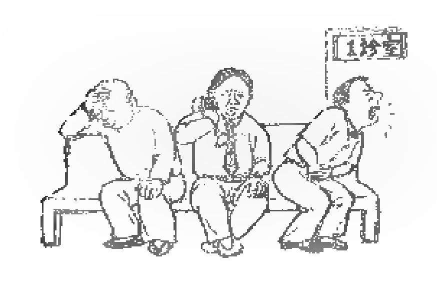
(7) A: 他跟谁一起去？
B: 他跟力波一起去。

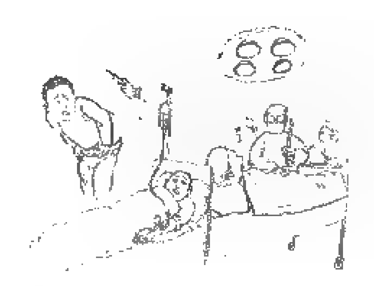
住	他朋友
锻炼	老师
说汉语	中国朋友

(8) A: 你每天晚上都做什么？
B: 我每天晚上都写汉字。

晚上	看书
下午	锻炼身体
上午	上课

3. 看图造句 Make up sentences according to the pictures





他哪儿不舒服？

他____________。

要不要____________？

你愿意____________

还是愿意____________？

4. 会话练习 Conversation practice

【谈论身体状况 Talking about one's health】

(1) A: 你怎么样？不太舒服吗？
B: 我________有点儿疼。
A: 要不要去医院？
B: 不用，我想休息一下。

(2) A: 我今天怎么全身不舒服？
B: 啊，你有点儿发烧。你现在不能去上课，要休息一下。
A: 你跟陈老师说一下，好吗？
B: 没问题。

(3) A: 你身体真好。
B: 是啊，我很少去医院。
A: 你每天都锻炼身体吗？
B: 我每天下午都锻炼。

【表达意愿与必要 Expressing one's desire or need】

(1) A: 明天是星期天，你想做什么？
B: 我不想做什么，我想在家休息。你想去哪儿？
A: 我要去市场买点儿东西。

(2) A: 你明天有时间吗？我们去打球(dǎ qiú)，好吗？
B: 对不起，我明天要去学太极拳(tàijíquán, taiji boxing)。你会打(dǎ)太极拳(tàijíquán)吗？
A: 我会一点儿。
B: 太好了！我想学，你能教我吗？

(3) A: 你为什么要学习汉语？
B: 我喜欢汉语。我想做一个汉语老师。
A: 我也喜欢教孩子(háizi)们汉语。

5. 交际练习 Communication exercises

(1) You feel sick while reading together with your classmate in the library. How do you tell him/her ?

(2) Your friend has a toothache (牙疼, yá téng). How do you help him/her tell the doctor about it?

(3) You want to go to China to study Chinese and to visit the city of Shanghai, but your friend thinks that in order to study Chinese well you should go to Beijing. How do you talk to him/her about this?

请假条(qǐngjiàtiáo, note requesting leave)

陈老师：

我今天头疼，还有点儿发烧，很不舒服。医生说应该休息两天。对不起，我明天不能来上课。

马大为 十一月二十八日

四. 阅读和复述 Reading Comprehension and Paraphrasing

大为，你怎么还不起床？什么？你头疼？你全身都不舒服？你要睡觉，不想起床？你应该去看病。你要睡觉，不愿意去医院？大为，你不能睡觉，你应该去医院，你得去看病。我跟你一起去医院。现在去还是下午去？当然现在去。我们应该现在去。

医生，他是8号，他的中文名字叫马大为，今年22岁。他头疼，全身都不舒服。您给他看一下。您说他发烧，嗓子还有点儿发炎。是感冒！他要不要住院？不用住院，要吃药。大为，你愿意吃中药还是愿意吃西药？你可以吃西药。什么？你不愿意吃西药？你愿意吃中药？好吧，医生，您给他一点儿中药。

五. 语法 Grammar

1. 主谓谓语句 Sentences with a subject-predicate phrase as predicate

The main element of the predicate in this kind of sentence is a subject-predicate phrase. In many cases the person or thing that the subject of the subject-predicate phrase (subject 2) denotes is a part of the person or thing denoted by the subject of the whole sentence (subject 1).

Subject 1	*Predicate 1*	
	Subject 2	Predicate 2
马大为	头	疼。
他	全身	都不舒服。
你	身体	好吗？
宋华	学习	怎么样？
今天	天气	冷不冷？

The negative adverb "不" is usually placed before the predicate of the subject-predicate phrase (predicate 2). Its A/V-not-A/V form is produced by juxtaposing the affirmative and negative forms of predicate 2.

2. 选择疑问句 Alternative questions

An alternative question is created when two possible situations, A and B, are connected by the conjunction "还是". The person to whom the question is addressed is expected to choose one of the alternatives.

Question			*Answer*
Alternative A	还是	Alternative B	
现在去	还是	下午去？	现在去。(*Alternative A*)
你看病	还是	他看病？	他看病。(*Alternative B*)
你愿意吃中药	还是	愿意吃西药？	我愿意吃中药。(*Alternative A*)
你是老师	还是	学生？	我是学生。(*Alternative B*)

3. 能愿动词谓语句(2) Sentences with an optative verb (2):要,想,愿意

The optative verbs "要" and "想" both express subjective intention and desire. They are basically the same in meaning. Sometimes "要" emphasizes intent or a demand, while "想" places more emphasis on intention or hope. For example:

我要吃烤鸭。

我想去北京吃烤鸭。

The negative form for both "想" and "要" (denoting desire) is "不想".

"愿意" is also used to express one's wishes. It means a willingness to do something or a hope that something will occur according to the wishes of the person denoted by the subject.

Subject	*Predicate*	
	OpV	V　　O
马大为	要	睡觉。
丁力波	想	学习　美术。
他	不　想	去　医院。
她	愿意　不愿意	参加　聚会?

The optative verb “要” is also used to express need. Its negative form is “不用”. For example:

他要不要住院?

明天天气怎么样? 要多穿衣服吗?

明天不用多穿衣服。

六. 汉字　Chinese Characters

1. 汉字的结构 (5) Structure of Chinese characters (5)

The enclosure structure ②

a. Left-bottom-right enclosure



出　画

b. Left-bottom enclosure



这　起　题

2. 认写基本汉字 Learn and write basic Chinese characters

(1) 予　　フ マ 予 予
yǔ　　to give　　4 strokes

(2) 母　　𠃊 𠃋 𠃌 母 母
mǔ　　mother　　5 strokes

(3) 冬　　ノ ク 夂 冬 冬
dōng　　winter　　5 strokes

(4) 令　　ノ 人 𠆢 今 令
lìng　　order　　5 strokes

(5) 牙　　一 二 于 牙
yá　　tooth　　4 strokes



(6) 衣　　丶 亠 ナ 衤 衣 衣
yī　　clothes　　6 strokes

(7) 自　　(丿+目)
zì　　self　　6 strokes

(8) 发(發)　　𠃋 ㇇ 少 发 发
fā　　to send out　　5 strokes

(9) 主　　(丶+王)
zhǔ　　host　　5 strokes

(10) 厂(廠)　　一 厂
chǎng　　factory　　2 strokes

3. 认写课文中的汉字 Learn and write the Chinese characters appearing in the texts

(1) 全身 quánshēn

全 → 人 + 王　　6 strokes

(2) 舒服 shūfu

舒 → 𠆢 + 舍 + 予　　12 strokes

服 → 月 + 卩 + 又　　8 strokes

𠂉 (měizìtóu)　　丿 𠂉　　2 strokes

(3) 每 měi

每 → 𠂉 + 母　　7 strokes

疒 (bìngzìpáng)(the “illness” side, denoting disease or ailment.)

丶 亠 广 疒 疒　　5 strokes

(4) 疼 téng

疼 → 疒 + 冬　　10 strokes

(The "illness" side denotes the meaning, "冬" indicates the pronunciation.)

(5) 嗓子 sǎngzi

嗓 → 口 + 又 + 又 + 又 + 木　　13 strokes

东 jiān　一 𠂉 车 东 东　　5 strokes

火 (huǒzìpáng, on the left side of a multi-component character, the fourth stroke in "火" is written as a dot. It is called the " fire" side.) 丶 丷 火 火　　4 strokes

(6) 锻炼 duànliàn (鍛煉)

锻 → 钅 + 段　　14 strokes

(The meaning side is "钅", and the phonetic side is "段".)

炼 → 火 + 东　　9 strokes

(7) 想 xiǎng

想 → 木 + 目 + 心　　13 strokes

(The meaning part is "心", and the phonetic part is "相".)

(8) 病 bìng

病 → 疒 + 丙　　10 strokes

(The meaning side is "疒", and the phonetic side is "丙".)

(9) 身体 shēntǐ (身體)

体 → 亻 + 本　　7 strokes

(10) 吧 ba

吧 → 口 + 巴　　7 strokes

(The meaning side is "口", and the phonetic side is "巴".)

冫 (liǎngdiǎnshuǐ) (the "two-drops-of-water" side) 丶 冫　　2 strokes

(11) 冷 lěng

冷 → 冫 + 令　　7 strokes

(12) 穿 chuān

穿 → 穴 + 牙　　9 strokes

(13) 休息 xiūxi

休 → 亻 + 木　　[illegible] strokes

息 → 自 + 心　　10 strokes

(14) 挂号 guàhào (掛號)

挂 → 扌 + 土 + 土　　9 strokes

(15) 发炎 fāyán (發炎)

炎 → 火 + 火　　8 strokes

弋 (yáozìtóu)　一 七 弋　　3 strokes

(the "eminent" top) (Please differentiate from "戈".)

(16) 发烧 fāshāo (發燒)

烧 → 火 + 弋 + 兀　　10 strokes

(17) 感冒 gǎnmào

感 → 戊 + 一 + 口 + 心　　13 strokes

冒 → 曰 + 目　　9 strokes

(18) 住院 zhùyuàn

住 → 亻 + 主　　7 strokes

(The meaning side is "亻", and the phonetic side is "主".)

(19) 中药 zhōngyào (中藥)

药 → 艹 + 纟 + 勺　　9 strokes

(20) 愿意 yuànyì (願意)

愿 → 厂 + 白 + 小 + 心　　14 strokes

文化知识 Cultural Notes

Chinese Herbal Medicine

Chinese herbal medicine is used in traditional Chinese medical practice, which has a history of thousands of years. According to tradition, a sage-emperor of remote antiquity called Shennong ("Holy Farmer") experimented with many types of herbs in order to find cures for his subjects. Traditional Chinese herbal medicine differs from modern Western medicine in that basically it does not use artificially created chemicals but is extracted directly from natural substances.

Traditional Chinese remedies can be divided into three categories, according to their sources. First is medicine from vegetable sources, such as the roots, stems, leaves, and fruits of plants. Second is medicine from animals, including their organs and secretions such as bezoar (cow gallstones), snake venom, and deer musk. Third are medicines from mineral sources, including gypsum and others.

Traditional Chinese medicine can be effective in treating many frequently occurring health problems like the common cold and fevers. Most doctors agree that side effects from the majority of herbal medicines are relatively mild. Currently, doctors in China, be they practitioners trained in Chinese or Western medicine, are exploring ways to combine the two traditions for use in treatment as well as prevention therapies.

Ma Dawei recently met a new female friend. In this lesson, he will show us how to make phone calls, rent lodgings, ask for help, and invite people for a visit.

第十三课 Lesson 13

我 认识 了 一 个 漂亮 的 姑娘
Wǒ rènshi le yí ge piàoliang de gūniang

一、课文 Text





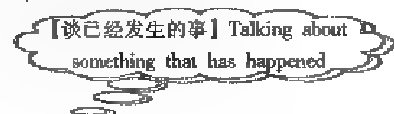
宋 华：大为，听说 你 得 了 感冒，现在 你 身体 怎么样？
Sòng Huá：Dàwéi, tīngshuō nǐ dé le gǎnmào, xiànzài nǐ shēntǐ zěnmeyàng?

马 大为：我 去 了 医院，吃 了 很 多 中药。① 现在 我 头 还 有点儿 疼。
Mǎ Dàwéi：Wǒ qù le yīyuàn, chī le hěn duō zhōngyào. Xiànzài wǒ tóu hái yǒudiǎnr téng.

宋　华：你 还 应该 多 休息。
Sòng Huá：Nǐ hái yīnggāi duō xiūxi.

马 大为：宋 华，我 想 告诉 你 一 件 事儿。
Mǎ Dàwéi：Sòng Huá, wǒ xiǎng gàosu nǐ yí jiàn shìr.

宋　华：什么 事儿？
Sòng Huá：Shénme shìr?



马 大为：我 认识 了 一 个 漂亮 的 姑娘， 她 愿意 做 我 女 朋友。 我们 常常 一起 散步，一起 看 电影、 喝 咖啡，一起 听 音乐。
Mǎ Dàwéi：Wǒ rènshi le yí ge piàoliang de gūniang, tā yuànyì zuò wǒ nǚ péngyou. Wǒmen chángcháng yìqǐ sànbù, yìqǐ kàn diànyǐng、hē kāfēi, yìqǐ tīng yīnyuè.

宋　华：祝贺 你！ 这 是 好 事 啊。
Sòng Huá：Zhùhè nǐ! Zhè shì hǎo shì a.

马 大为：谢谢。是 好 事，可是 我 的 宿舍 太 小，她 不 能 常 来 我 这儿。[2] 我 想 找 一 间 房子。
Mǎ Dàwéi：Xièxie. Shì hǎo shì, kěshì wǒ de sùshè tài xiǎo, tā bù néng cháng lái wǒ zhèr. Wǒ xiǎng zhǎo yì jiān fángzi.

宋　华：你 想 租 房子？[3]
Sòng Huá：Nǐ xiǎng zū fángzi?



马 大为：是 啊，我 想 租 一 间 有 厨房 和 厕所 的 房子，[4] 房租 不 能 太 贵。
Mǎ Dàwéi：Shì a, wǒ xiǎng zū yì jiān yǒu chúfáng hé cèsuǒ de fángzi, fángzū bù néng tài guì.

宋　华：星期六 我 跟 你 一起 去 租 房 公司，好 吗？
Sòng Huá：Xīngqīliù wǒ gēn nǐ yìqǐ qù zū fáng gōngsī, hǎo ma?

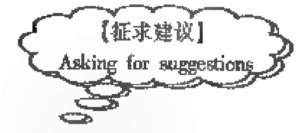
马大为：太 好 了。
Mǎ Dàwéi：Tài hǎo le.

生词 New Words

1.	姑娘	N	gūniang	girl　漂亮的姑娘，小姑娘
2.	听说	V	tīngshuō	to be told
	听	V	tīng	to listen
3.	得	V	dé	to have, to get　得感冒，得病
4.	告诉	V	gàosu	to tell
5.	件	M	jiàn	(a measure word) piece　一件工作
6.	事儿	N	shìr	matter; affair; thing　一件事儿，什么事儿
7.	散步	VO	sànbù	to take a walk; to walk　一起散步
	步	N	bù	step
8.	电影	N	diànyǐng	movie　看电影，中国电影
	电	N	diàn	electricity
	影	N	yǐng	shadow
*9.	咖啡	N	kāfēi	coffee　喝咖啡
10.	可是	Conj	kěshì	but
*11.	宿舍	N	sùshè	dormitory　学生宿舍，回宿舍
*12.	找	V	zhǎo	to look for　找房子，找人，找东西
13.	房子	N	fángzi	house　住房子，没有房子，买房子
14.	租	V	zū	to rent　租房子，租光盘
15.	间	M	jiān	(a measure word for room, house, etc)一间房子
16.	厨房	N	chúfáng	kitchen　一间厨房
17.	厕所	N	cèsuǒ	toilet　一间厕所，男厕所，女厕所
18.	房租	N	fángzū	rent (for a house, flat, etc)
19.	公司	N	gōngsī	company　小公司，大公司，租房公司



（二）



（宋华与马大为在家美租房公司。）

马 大为：那 间 房子 房租 太 贵，你 说，我 应该 怎么 办？[5]
Mǎ Dàwéi：Nà jiān fángzi fángzū tài guì, nǐ shuō, wǒ yīnggāi zěnme bàn?

宋　华：你想租还是不想租？
Sòng Huá：Nǐ xiǎng zū háishi bù xiǎng zū?

马大为：当然想租。
Mǎ Dàwéi：Dāngrán xiǎng zū.

宋　华：我给陆雨平打个电话，让他来帮助我们。
Sòng Huá：Wǒ gěi Lù Yǔpíng dǎ ge diànhuà, ràng tā lái bāngzhù wǒmen.

马大为：他很忙，会来吗？
Mǎ Dàwéi：Tā hěn máng, huì lái ma?

宋　华：他会来。
Sòng Huá：Tā huì lái.

（宋华给陆雨平打电话。）



陆雨平：喂，哪一位啊？⑥
Lù Yǔpíng：Wèi, nǎ yí wèi a?

宋　华：我是宋华，我和大为现在在家美租房公司。
Sòng Huá：Wǒ shì Sòng Huá, wǒ hé Dàwéi xiànzài zài Jiāměi Zū Fáng Gōngsī.

陆雨平：你们怎么在那儿？
Lù Yǔpíng：Nǐmen zěnme zài nàr?

宋　华：大为要租房子。
Sòng Huá：Dàwéi yào zū fángzi.

陆雨平：你们看没看房子？
Lù Yǔpíng：Nǐmen kàn méi kàn fángzi?

宋　华：我们看了一间房子。那间房子很好，可是房租有点儿贵。
Sòng Huá：Wǒmen kàn le yì jiān fángzi. Nà jiān fángzi hěn hǎo, kěshì fángzū yǒudiǎnr guì.

陆雨平：你们找了经理没有？⑦
Lù Yǔpíng：Nǐmen zhǎo le jīnglǐ méiyǒu?

宋　华：我们没有找经理。
Sòng Huá：Wǒmen méiyǒu zhǎo jīnglǐ.

陆雨平：宋华，这个公司的经理是我朋友，我跟他说一下，请他帮助你们，我想可能没有问题。
Lù Yǔpíng：Sòng Huá, zhè ge gōngsī de jīnglǐ shì wǒ péngyou, wǒ gēn tā shuō yíxià, qǐng tā bāngzhù nǐmen, wǒ xiǎng kěnéng méiyǒu wèntí.

【邀请】Invitations

宋　华：好啊。晚上我们请你和你朋友吃饭。⑧
Sòng Huá：Hǎo a. Wǎnshang wǒmen qǐng nǐ hé nǐ péngyou chīfàn.

陆雨平：好，你们在公司等我，再见。
Lù Yǔpíng：Hǎo, nǐmen zài gōngsī děng wǒ, zàijiàn.

宋　华：再见。
Sòng Huá：Zàijiàn.

生词 New Words

1. 办	V	bàn	to do　怎么办
2. 打电话	VO	dǎ diànhuà	to make a phone call　给她打电话
电话	N	diànhuà	telephone; phone call　一个电话，你的电话
3. 让	V	ràng	to let; to allow; to make
4. 帮助	V	bāngzhù	to help
5. 喂	Int	wèi	hello; hey
6. 位	M	wèi	(a polite measure word for person) 一位小姐，一位老师，一位医生，哪一位
7. 经理	N	jīnglǐ	manager
8. 可能	OpV	kěnéng	maybe　可能来，可能感冒，可能住院
9. 吃饭	VO	chīfàn	to eat (a meal)
饭	N	fàn	meal　中国饭
10. 等	V	děng	to wait　等人，等他们，等一下
11. 家美	PN	Jiāměi	(name of a house rental agency)

补充生词 Supplementary Words

1. 客厅	N	kètīng	living room
2. 卧室	N	wòshì	bedroom
3. 书房	N	shūfáng	a study
4. 套	M	tào	suite
5. 方便	A	fāngbiàn	convenient
6. 巧	A	qiǎo	coincidental
7. 合适	A	héshì	suitable
8. 热心	A	rèxīn	enthusiastic
9. 包括	V	bāokuò	to include
10. 水电费	N	shuǐdiànfèi	utility
11. 新	A	xīn	new
12. 回信	N/VO	huíxìn	reply/to reply

二、注释 Notes

① 我吃了很多中药。

When the adjectives "多" and "少" are used as attributive modifiers, we must put adverbs such as "很" before them. For example: "很多中药" or "很多学生", and not "多中药", "多学生". "的" may be left out after "很多".

② 她不能常来我这儿。

"She cannot come to my place very often."

The objects of the verbs "来,去,到,在" and the preposition "在" are generally words of place or location; if they are not, then "这儿" and "那儿" must be added to them. For example: "来我这儿","去力波那儿","到我朋友那儿","在老师这儿".

We cannot say "来我" or "在老师".

Generally, "常常" and "常" are used interchangeably.

③ 你想租房子?

A declarative sentence can be turned into a question by reading it with the same intonation as an interrogative sentence.

④ 我想租一间有厨房和厕所的房子。

"I want to rent a house with a kitchen and a bathroom."

We must add "的" to a verb or verbal phrase to turn it into an adjective modifier. For example:

有厨房的房子

给她的蛋糕 (the cake given to her)

今天来的人(the people who come today)

As has been said previously, the attributive must be placed before the words it modifies.

⑤ 你说,我应该怎么办?

"What do you think I should do?"

"你说" (or "你看") is used here to solicit the listener's opinion.

⑥ 喂,哪一位啊?

"Hello, who is speaking?"

"喂" is an interjection often used in phone calls as a form of greeting or response. For example:

喂,是丁力波吗?

喂,我是马大为,请问您找谁?

喂,您好,我想找一下王小云。

The measure word "位" applies to persons only and is a more polite and respectful form than the measure word "个". For example:

这位先生　　二十位老师　　两位教授

⑦ 你们找了经理没有?

"Have you (found and) talked to the manager?"

"找经理" here means "talk to the manager".

⑧ 晚上我们请你和你朋友吃饭。

"We'll invite you and your friend to dinner this evening."

"吃饭" means "to eat (a meal)". "请…吃饭" means "to invite someone to dinner (or lunch)".

三、练习与运用 Drills and practice

KEY SENTENCES

1. 你们看没看房子？
2. 我们看了一间房子。
3. 你们找了经理没有？
4. 我们没有找经理。
5. 我给陆雨平打个电话，让他来帮助我们。
6. 晚上我们请你和你朋友吃饭。
7. 他会来吗？
8. 她不能常来我这儿。
9. 我想租一间有厨房和厕所的房子。

1. 熟读下列词组 Master the following phrases

(1)看了一间房子　认识了一位教授　买了两斤香蕉　找了两块钱　说了一件事
送了一张光盘　参加了一个聚会　写了十个汉字　吃了一个蛋糕　喝了红葡萄酒

(2)找没找　租没租　等没等　买没买　看没看　问没问　来没来　送没送
上课没上课　休息没休息　起床没起床　锻炼没锻炼　帮助没帮助

(3)这儿　他那儿　老师那儿　医生那儿　我朋友那儿　我哥哥这儿　王经理那儿

(4)可能来　可能去　可能做　不可能等　不可能租　不可能帮助　可能不可能得

(5)一件事儿　一件工作　这件衣服　那间厨房　这间宿舍
这位小姐　那位医生　一位朋友　一位经理　一位记者

(6)让他帮助你　让他去那儿　让他写汉字
请他们吃饭　请小姐喝咖啡　请我朋友教我

2. 句型替换 Pattern drills

(1) 我想告诉你一件事儿。
什么事儿？
我认识了一个姑娘。
好啊。

看	一个中国电影
买	一件衣服
参加	一个聚会
写	二十个汉字

(2) 他们看没看房子？
他们看了一间房子。
你呢？
我没有看。

买	苹果	五斤
吃	蛋糕	很多
喝	葡萄酒	一瓶

(3) 你去了租房公司没有？
我去了租房公司。
租房公司怎么样？
租房公司很好。

吃	生日蛋糕
买	那本中文书
听	那张光盘
租	那间房子

(4) 你给大为打个电话，好吗？
什么事儿？
让他去租房公司。
没有问题。

来	我这儿
去	老师那儿
等	他女朋友
找	张教授

(5) 你请他做什么？
我请他吃饭。
他会来吗？
他会来。

看电影	去
散步	来
喝咖啡	去
介绍中国文化 wénhuà	来

(6) 喂，哪一位啊？
我是马大为。
我现在在租房公司。
你怎么在那儿？
我要租房子。

王小云	丁力波宿舍	帮助他学习
宋华	汉语系	找陈老师
陆雨平	宋华家	祝贺他的生日
丁力波	医院	看病

3. 看图造句 Make up sentences according to the pictures



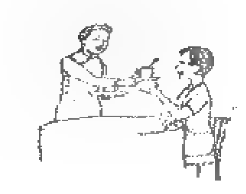
他想买什么？
他______________。



他买了什么？
他______________。



他要什么？
他______________。



他要了咖啡还是要了酒？
他______________。

4. 会话练习 Conversation practice

【打电话 Making a phone call】

(1) B：喂，哪一位啊？
A：我是____________。
B：是你啊。你怎么样？有什么事儿？
A：____________________。

(2) B：喂，你好，请问您找谁？
A：我找丁力波，我是他朋友。
B：好，请等一下。
C：喂，我是丁力波。
A：你好，力波，我想告诉你一件事儿。

(3) A：喂，是403号宿舍吗？
B：是啊，您找谁？

A：王小云在吗？
B：她不在。
A：请问，她家的电话号是多少？
B：82305647。
A：谢谢。

【租房 Renting a house】

(1) A：我想租一间房子。
B：你的宿舍不好吗？
A：我的宿舍______________，想______________。
B：好，我跟你一起去租房公司。

(2) A：您想租房子吗？
B：是，我想租一间有__________、__________的房子。
A：我们家美租房公司有很多好房子。
B：房租贵不贵？
A：不贵，每月______________元。
B：包括(bāokuò)水电费(shuǐdiànfèi)吗？
A：不包括。
B：可以看一下吗？
A：当然可以。

【征求建议 Asking for suggestions】

(1) A：明天是我姐姐的生日。你说，我应该给她买什么？
B：你可以买____________。
A：我应该在哪儿买______________？
B：____________________。

(2) A：我想跟你说一件事儿。
B：什么事儿？
A：星期日是我女朋友的生日，可是宋华让我参加一个聚会。你说，我应该怎么办？
B：______________________________。

【邀请 An invitation】

(1) A：星期天你有时间吗？

B：我__________。

A：我想请你__________。

B：__________。

(2) A：白小姐，晚上我请你__________，好吗？

B：对不起，我__________。

A：你什么时候有时间？

B：__________。

5. 交际练习 Communication exercises

(1) Make a phone call from the university dormitory to a friend of yours to tell him/her something that has happened recently in your life or studies.

(2) Your mother and father are coming to China to see you, and you want to rent a house for them. Your request to the rental company is for a large house with a kitchen and a bathroom. Your parents want to live in it for one week.

(3) Thanksgiving Day (感恩节，Gǎn'ēn Jié) is coming and you are inviting a few good friends to dinner. Some of them can come and some cannot.
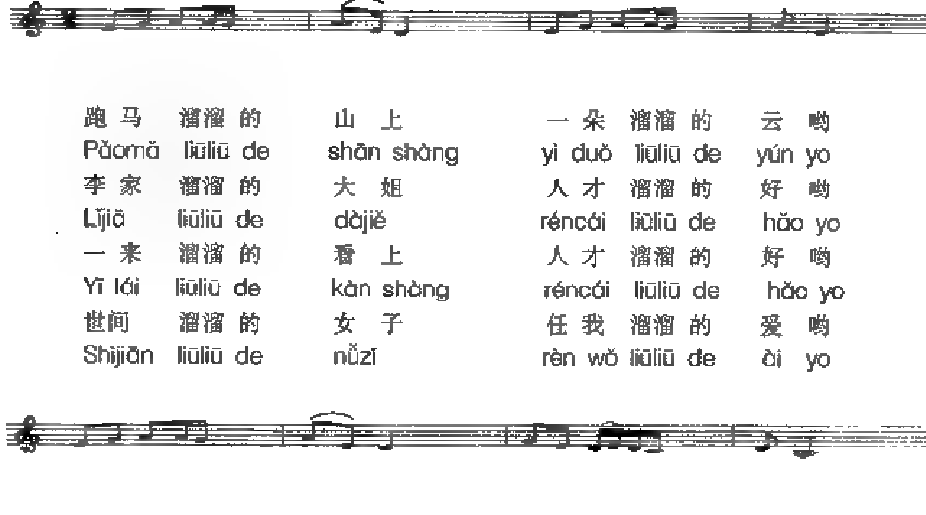
(4) You are buying things to make Thanksgiving dinner in a super market. How would you ask the salesperson for help?

Sing a song.

康定情歌

Kāngdìng Qínggē

稍慢 饱满地　　四川民歌



端端 溜溜的 照在 康定 溜溜的 城哟
Duānduān liūliū de zhào zài Kāngdìng liūliū de chéng yo
张家 溜溜的 大哥 看上 溜溜的 她哟
Zhāngjiā liūliū de dàgē kànshàng liūliū de tā yo
二来 溜溜的 看上 会当 溜溜的 家哟
Èr lái liūliū de kàn shàng huì dāng liūliū de jiā yo
世间 溜溜的 男子 任你 溜溜的 求哟
Shìjiān liūliū de nánzǐ rèn nǐ liūliū de qiú yo



月亮 弯 弯 康定 溜溜的 城哟
Yuèliàng wān wān Kāngdìng liūliūde chéng yo
月亮 弯 弯 看上 溜溜的 她哟
Yuèliàng wān wān kàn shàng liūliūde tā yo
月亮 弯 弯 会当 溜溜的 家哟
Yuèliàng wān wān huì dāng liūliūde jiā yo
月亮 弯 弯 任你 溜溜的 求哟
Yuèliàng wān wān rèn nǐ liūliūde qiú yo

四. 阅读和复述 Reading Comprehension and Paraphrasing

马大为给女朋友小燕子(Xiǎoyànzi)的一封信

亲爱(qīn'ài, dear)的小燕子:

你好吗? 我很想(xiǎng, miss)你。

星期三我得了感冒,头疼,嗓子有点儿发炎,还有点儿发烧。可是现在我好了。

我想跟你说一件事儿。小燕子,我很喜欢你。我想让你常常来看我,跟我一起听音乐,喝咖啡。可是我住的宿舍太小,也不方便(fāngbiàn)。我想租一间房子,有厨房,有厕所,房租不能太贵。我请宋华帮助我找房子。

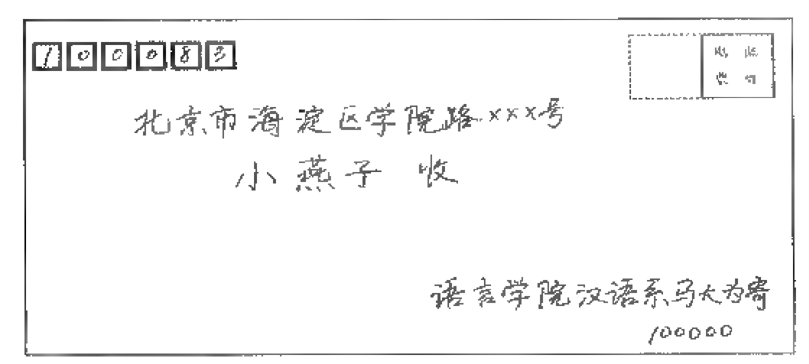
星期六我和宋华一起去了家美租房公司,我们看了一间房子,房子很好,很大,有厨房、厕所,可是房租太贵。宋华给陆雨平打了一个电话,问他我们应该怎么办。真巧(qiǎo),家美租房公司的经理是陆雨平的朋友,陆雨平请他帮助我们。这位经理很热心(rèxīn),他让我们看了很多房子。我租了一间很合适(héshì)的房子,房租不太贵。晚上我们请陆雨平和经理去吃了北京烤鸭。我真高兴。

小燕子,我想请你来看一下我的新(xīn)房子。你说,什么时候合适?

我等你的回信(huíxìn)。

你的大为

12月10日



五. 语法 Grammar

1. 助词"了"(1) The Particle "了"(1)

The particle "了" can be used after a verb to indicate realization or completion of an action. For example:

你买了几个苹果? (How many apples have you bought?)	***Compare***:	你买几个苹果? (How many apples are you going to buy? How many apples will you buy?)
我买了五个苹果。 (I have bought five apples.)		我买五个苹果。 (I'm going to buy five apples. I will buy five apples.)

If the verb with a "了" takes an object, this object usually has an attributive, which, in many cases, is a numeral-measure word, an adjective, or a pronoun.

V + 了 + Nu—M / A /Pr + O

Subject	***Predicate***			
	Verb	**了**	**Nu-M / Pr / A**	**Object**
我们	看	了	一间	房子。
王小云	买	了	两瓶	酒。
马大为	认识	了	一个 漂亮的	姑娘。
大为	吃	了	很多	中药。
我	介绍	了	那位	教授。
他	看	了	有名的	京剧。
她朋友	租	了	她的	房子。

If the object does not have an attributive (eg:"他买了苹果" or "大为得了感冒"), other elements are needed in the predicate to form a complete sentence. For example:

听说你得了感冒,现在你身体怎么样?

我去了医院,也吃了很多中药。

The negative form of this kind of sentence is made by placing "没" or "没有" before the verb and dropping "了" after the verb.

没有 + V O

我们没有找经理。

他没买酒。

Note: One can never use "不" to negate this kind of sentence.

The V/A-not-V/A form is "V+没(有)+V" or "V+了没有".

V + 没(有)V + O

你们看没看房子?

你们找没找经理?

V + 了 + O + 没有
你们看了房子没有？
你们找了经理没有？

Note：“了” indicates only the stage of the realization or completion of an action，but not the time at which this action occurs (which may be in the past，present，or future). In this kind of sentence the action，in many cases，has already happened. It is also possible，though，that the completion of the action will occur in the future. For example：

明天下午我买了本子去吃饭。
(Tomorrow afternoon I'll have supper after I have bought the notebooks.)

Not all past actions need the particle “了”. If an action occurs frequently or a sentence describes an action in the past but does not emphasize the completion of the action，“了” is not used. For example：

过去(guòqù，in the past)他常常来看我。
去年(qùnián，last year)我在美术学院学习美术。

2. 兼语句 Pivotal sentences

The pivotal sentence is also a sentence with a verbal predicate. Its predicate is composed of two verbal phrases. The object of the first verb is simultaneously the subject of the second verb. The first verb in a pivotal sentence should be a verb with a meaning of “making” or “ordering” somebody to do something，such as “请” or “让”.

Both “请” and “让” have the meaning of requiring others to do something. “请” is used in a formal situation and sounds polite. “请” also has the meaning of “to invite”. For example：

晚上我们请你和你朋友吃饭。

Subject	*Predicate*			
	Verb 1	Object 1 (Subject 2)	Verb 2	Object 2
宋华	让	陆雨平	来帮助	他们。
陆雨平	请	经理	帮助	马大为。
妈妈	不让	她	喝	咖啡。

3. 能愿动词谓语句(3) Sentences with an optative verb (3)：“可能”，“会”

The optative verb “可能” expresses possibility. Besides expressing ability，“会” is also used to express possibility. For example：

今年八月他可能去上海。
现在八点，他不可能睡觉。
明天他会不会来上课？
他得了感冒，明天不会来上课。

六. 汉字 Chinese Characters

1. 部首查字法 Consulting a Chinese dictionary using radicals

Many Chinese character dictionaries are organized according to the order of the characters' “radicals”. Radicals are common components，located on the top，bottom，left，right，or outer part of characters，which usually indicate the class of meaning to which a character belongs. For example，“好”，“她”，“妈”，“姐”，“妹”，“姓”，and “娜” are grouped under the radical “女”，which is the common component on the left side of these characters. However，“意”，“思”，“想”，“您”，and “愿” are grouped under the radical “心”，which is the common component at the bottom of these characters.

In the radical index of a dictionary，radicals are listed in order according to the number of their strokes. In the index of entries，characters of the same radical are arranged in groups according to the number of their strokes exceeding those of the radical.

Therefore，after determining the radical of a character，you should count the number of strokes in the radical and consult the radical index to obtain the page number where the radical entry can be found in the index of entries. Then，count the number of strokes in the character excluding the radical and consult the corresponding group to find the character and its page number in the dictionary. For example，the character “锻” will be found under the “钅” radical and in the section containing characters with 9 strokes more than those of the radical.

2. 认写基本汉字 Learn and write basic Chinese characters

(1) 古 (十+口)
gǔ ancient 5 strokes

(2) 良 (丶+艮)
liáng good 7 strokes

(3) 斥 ˊ 厂 斤 斤 斥
chì scold 5 strokes

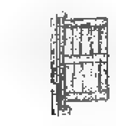
(4) 事 一 ㇐ 㠭 亊 事 事 事 事
shì matter 8 strokes

(5) 步 丨 ⺊ 止 止 步 步 步
bù step 7 strokes
(The ancient character depicts two feet walking.)

(6) 电(電)　(曰+ 乚)
diàn　electricity　5 strokes
(The ancient character depicts lightning.)



(7) 户　(丶+尸)
hù　door　4 strokes
(The ancient character looks like a door with a single leaf.)



(8) 方　(丶+万)
fāng　square　4 strokes

(9) 豆　一 ㄒ 〒 戸 戸 戸 豆
dòu　bean　7 strokes
(The ancient character looks like a long-stemmed wine cup.)

(10) 办(辦)　刁 力 办 办
bàn　to do　4 strokes

(11) 竹　丿 𠂉 𠂉 𥫗 竹 竹
zhú　bamboo　6 strokes
(The ancient character resembles bamboo leaves.)

(12) 反　一 厂 万 反
fǎn　reverse　4 strokes

3. 认写课文中的汉字 Learn and write the Chinese characters appearing in the texts

(1) 姑娘 gūniang

姑 → 女 + 古　8 strokes
(The meaning side is "女", and the phonetic side is "古".)

娘 → 女 + 良　10 strokes
("女" suggests that the character is connected with females.)

(2) 听说 tīngshuō (聽說)

听 → 口 + 斤　7 strokes

(3) 得 dé

得 → 彳 + 日 + 一 + 寸　11 strokes

(4) 告诉 gàosu (告訴)

告 → 𠂇 + 口　7 strokes
(The meaning side is "口".)

诉 → 讠 + 斥　7 strokes
(The meaning side is "讠". Note how it differs from "斥".)

(5) 件 jiàn

件 → 亻 + 牛　6 strokes

(6) 散步 sànbù

散 → 龷 + 月 + 攵　12 strokes

(7) 电影 diànyǐng (電影)

影 → 曰 + 京 + 彡　15 strokes

(8) 咖啡 kāfēi

咖 → 口 + 力 + 口　8 strokes

啡 → 口 + 非　11 strokes
(The meaning side is "口", and the phonetic side is "非".)

(9) 宿舍 sùshè

宿 → 宀 + 亻 + 百　11 strokes
("宀" denotes a house, "百" shows a mat, and "亻" suggests a person.)

舍 → 人 + 舌　8 strokes
("人" denotes a shelter and "舌" indicates the pronunciation.)

(10) 房子 fángzi

房 → 户 + 方　8 strokes
(The meaning is suggested by "户", and the pronunciation is shown by "方".)

(11) 租 zū

租 → 禾 + 且 10 strokes

(12) 厨房 chúfáng (廚房)

厨 → 厂 + 豆 + 寸 12 strokes

(13) 厕所 cèsuǒ (廁所)

厕 → 厂 + 贝 + 刂 8 strokes

所 → 户 + 斤 8 strokes

(14) 公司 gōngsī

公 → 八 + 厶 4 strokes

(15) 打 dǎ

打 → 扌 + 丁 5 strokes

(16) 电话 diànhuà (電話)

话 → 讠 + 舌 8 strokes

(Speaking is related to the tongue.)

(17) 让 ràng (讓)

让 → 讠 + 上 5 strokes

(18) 帮助 bāngzhù (幫助)

帮 → 邦 + 巾 9 strokes

("邦" denotes the pronunciation.)

助 → 且 + 力 7 strokes

𠬝 一 丆 𠂆 𠬝 4 strokes

(19) 喂 wèi

喂 → 口 + 田 + 𠬝 12 strokes

(20) 位 wèi

位 → 亻 + 立 7 strokes

圣 フ ス 𠬝 圣 圣 5 strokes

(21) 经理 jīnglǐ (經理)

经 → 纟 + 圣 [illegible] strokes

理 → 王 + 里 11 strokes

("里" indicates the pronunciation.)

⺮ (zhúzìtóu) (The vertical stroke and the vertical stroke with a hook in "竹" are both written as a dot, when this character is the top of a multi-component character.)

丿 𠂉 𠂉 ⺮ ⺮ ⺮ 6 strokes

(22) 等 děng

等 → ⺮ + 土 + 寸 12 strokes

饣 (shízìpáng) 丿 𠂉 饣 3 strokes

(23) 吃饭 chīfàn (吃飯)

饭 → 饣 + 反 7 strokes

文化知识 Cultural Notes

The Student Dormitory

One of the special features of Chinese universities is that student dormitories are usually integrated into the university campus. Unlike most Western universities, where dormitories usually do not meet the housing needs of all students, in China there is usually a residential area on campus where many staff and faculty live, and several large dormitories where it is mandatory for students to live.

Many students find living in dormitories convenient. Since the buildings are on campus and close to classrooms and research facilities, students may go to class and libraries on foot and save the time required to commute from off campus. Moreover, living in dormitories is convenient for socializing, exchanging ideas, and interactive learning.

However, some students find sharing a room with others inconvenient at times. For instance, a dormitory room cannot possibly provide the privacy needed for a date. In this lesson, Ma Dawei is eager to move out of the dormitory in order to gain some private space.

You have reached the last lesson in this volume! By the end of the lesson, you will know how to 1) make complaints and apologies; 2) send regards on someone else's behalf; 3) ask how a friend is getting along and 4) express greetings at festival times. This lesson also includes a summary and review of the major grammatical points covered in the previous lessons. With this review you will be able to see how many Chinese sentence patterns you have mastered, and evaluate your own progress. Congratulations on your achievements so far!

第十四课 Lesson 14 (复习 Review)

祝 你 圣诞 快乐
Zhù nǐ Shèngdàn kuàilè

一、课文 Text

马 大为：力波， 上午 十 点 半，你 妈妈 给 你 打 了 一 个 电话。 我 告诉 她 你 不 在。我 让 她 中午 再 给 你 打。
Mǎ Dàwéi：Lìbō, shàngwǔ shí diǎn bàn, nǐ māma gěi nǐ dǎ le yí ge diànhuà. Wǒ gàosu tā nǐ bú zài. Wǒ ràng tā zhōngwǔ zài gěi nǐ dǎ.

丁 力波：谢谢。我 刚才 去 邮局 给 我 妈妈 寄 了 点儿 东西。大为，我 今天 打扫 了 宿舍，你 的 脏 衣服 太 多 了。
Dīng Lìbō：Xièxie. Wǒ gāngcái qù yóujú gěi wǒ māma jì le diǎnr dōngxi. Dàwéi, wǒ jīntiān dǎsǎo le sùshè, nǐ de zāng yīfu tài duō le.

马 大为：不 好意思。[1] 这 两 天 我 太 忙 了，我 想 星期六 一起 洗。[2]
Mǎ Dàwéi：Bù hǎoyìsi. Zhè liǎng tiān wǒ tài máng le, wǒ xiǎng xīngqīliù yìqǐ xǐ.



（力波的妈妈给他打电话）

马 大为：喂，你 好，你 找 谁？ 啊，丁 力波 在，请 等 一下。力波，你 妈妈 的 电话。
Mǎ Dàwéi：Wèi, nǐ hǎo, nǐ zhǎo shéi? À, Dīng Lìbō zài, qǐng děng yíxià. Lìbō, nǐ māma de diànhuà.

丁 力波：谢谢。妈妈，你 好！
Dīng Lìbō：Xièxie. Māma, nǐ hǎo!

丁 云：力波，你 好 吗？
Dīng Yún：Lìbō, nǐ hǎo ma?

丁 力波：我 很 好。你 和 爸爸 身体 怎么样？
Dīng Lìbō：Wǒ hěn hǎo. Nǐ hé bàba shēntǐ zěnmeyàng?

丁 云：我 身体 很 好，你 爸爸 也 很 好。我们 工作 都 很 忙。你 外婆 身体 好 吗？
Dīng Yún：Wǒ shēntǐ hěn hǎo, nǐ bàba yě hěn hǎo. Wǒmen gōngzuò dōu hěn máng. Nǐ wàipó shēntǐ hǎo ma?

【转达问候】Passing on someone's regards

丁 力波：她 身体 很 好。她 让 我 问 你们 好。[3]
Dīng Lìbō：Tā shēntǐ hěn hǎo. Tā ràng wǒ wèn nǐmen hǎo.

丁 云：我们 也 问 她 好。你 哥哥、弟弟 怎么样？
Dīng Yún：Wǒmen yě wèn tā hǎo. Nǐ gēge、dìdi zěnmeyàng?

丁 力波：他们 也 都 很 好。哥哥 现在 在 一 个 中学 打工，弟弟 在 南方 旅行。我们 都 很 想 你们。
Dīng Lìbō：Tāmen yě dōu hěn hǎo. Gēge xiànzài zài yí ge zhōngxué dǎgōng, dìdi zài nánfāng lǚxíng. Wǒmen dōu hěn xiǎng nǐmen.

丁 云：我们 也 想 你们。你 现在 怎么样？ 你 住 的 宿舍 大 不 大？[4] 住 几 个 人？
Dīng Yún：Wǒmen yě xiǎng nǐmen. Nǐ xiànzài zěnmeyàng? Nǐ zhù de sùshè dà bu dà? Zhù jǐ ge rén?

丁 力波：我们 留学生 楼 两 个 人 住 一 间。[5] 我 跟 一
Dīng Lìbō：Wǒmen liúxuéshēng lóu liǎng ge rén zhù yì jiān. Wǒ gēn yí

个美国人住，他的中文名字叫马大为。
ge Měiguó rén zhù, tā de Zhōngwén míngzi jiào Mǎ Dàwéi.

丁　云：他也学习汉语吗？
Dīng Yún: Tā yě xuéxí Hànyǔ ma?

丁力波：对，他也学习汉语。我还有很多中国朋友，他们常常帮助我念生词、复习课文、练习口语。我还常常问他们语法问题，他们都是我的好朋友。
Dīng Lìbō: Duì, tā yě xuéxí Hànyǔ. Wǒ hái yǒu hěn duō Zhōngguó péngyou, tāmen chángcháng bāngzhù wǒ niàn shēngcí、fùxí kèwén、liànxí kǒuyǔ. Wǒ hái chángcháng wèn tāmen yǔfǎ wèntí, tāmen dōu shì wǒ de hǎo péngyou.

丁　云：这很好。力波，今年你要在中国过圣诞节，不能回家，我和你爸爸要送你一件圣诞礼物。
Dīng Yún: Zhè hěn hǎo. Lìbō, jīnnián nǐ yào zài Zhōngguó guò Shèngdàn Jié, bù néng huí jiā, wǒ hé nǐ bàba yào sòng nǐ yí jiàn Shèngdàn lǐwù.

丁力波：谢谢你们。我也给你们寄了圣诞礼物。
Dīng Lìbō: Xièxie nǐmen. Wǒ yě gěi nǐmen jì le Shèngdàn lǐwù.

丁　云：是吗？圣诞节我和你爸爸想去欧洲旅行。你呢？你去不去旅行？
Dīng Yún: Shì ma? Shèngdàn Jié wǒ hé nǐ bàba xiǎng qù Ōuzhōu lǚxíng. Nǐ ne? Nǐ qù bu qù lǚxíng?

丁力波：我要去上海旅行。
Dīng Lìbō: Wǒ yào qù Shànghǎi lǚxíng.

丁　云：上海很漂亮。祝你旅行快乐！
Dīng Yún: Shànghǎi hěn piàoliang. Zhù nǐ lǚxíng kuàilè.

【节日祝愿】
Extending holiday greetings

丁力波：谢谢。我也祝你和爸爸圣诞快乐！
Dīng Lìbō: Xièxie. Wǒ yě zhù nǐ hé bàba Shèngdàn kuàilè!

生词 New Words

No.	Word	POS	Pinyin	Meaning / Examples
1.	中午	N	zhōngwǔ	noon　今天中午，明天中午，星期一中午
2.	刚才	Adv	gāngcái	just now
3.	邮局	N	yóujú	post office
	邮	V	yóu	to post; to mail
	局	N	jú	office; bureau
4.	寄	V	jì	to post, to mail　寄书，寄光盘，寄东西
5.	打扫	V	dǎsǎo	to clean　打扫房子　打扫宿舍
	扫	V	sǎo	to sweep
6.	脏	A	zāng	dirty　脏衣服
7.	不好意思	IE	bù hǎoyìsi	to feel embarrassed　不好意思说，不好意思去
8.	洗	V	xǐ	to wash　洗衣服，洗手，洗苹果
*9.	外婆	N	wàipó	grandmother on the mother's side
10.	中学	N	zhōngxué	middle school　中学老师，中学生
11.	打工	V	dǎgōng	to have a part-time job　在中学打工，在哪儿打工
12.	南方	N	nánfāng	south　中国南方，去南方
13.	旅行	V	lǚxíng	to travel　去旅行，去北京旅行，去加拿大旅行
*14.	想	V	xiǎng	to miss; to remember with longing　想妈妈，想家
15.	留学生	N	liúxuéshēng	student studying abroad; international student　中国留学生，外国留学生，留学生宿舍
16.	住	V	zhù	to live; to stay
17.	楼	N	lóu	building　八号楼，四楼，留学生楼
18.	对	A	duì	right, correct　不对
19.	念	V	niàn	to read
20.	生词	N	shēngcí	new word　念生词，写生词，学习生词，教生词
	生	A	shēng	new
	词	N	cí	word
21.	复习	V	fùxí	to review　复习生词，复习外语，复习汉字
22.	课文	N	kèwén	text　念课文，学习课文，复习课文，教课文
23.	练习	V/N	liànxí	to practice/exercise　练习生词，做练习
	练	V	liàn	to practice

24.	口语	N	kǒuyǔ	spoken language 练习口语，教口语
25.	语法	N	yǔfǎ	grammar 学习语法，教语法
26.	过	V	guò	to spend (time); to celebrate (a birthday, a holiday) 过圣诞节，过生日
27.	节	N	jié	festival
*28.	礼物	N	lǐwù	present; gift 一件礼物，圣诞礼物，送他礼物
29.	圣诞	PN	Shèngdàn	Christmas 圣诞快乐
30.	欧洲	PN	Ōuzhōu	Europe
*31.	上海	PN	Shànghǎi	Shanghai

补充生词 Supplementary Words

1.	整理	V	zhěnglǐ	to put in order; to arrange; to sort out
2.	电视	N	diànshì	TV
3.	乱	A	luàn	in disorder; in a mess
4.	日记	N	rìjì	diary
5.	晴	A	qíng	sunny
6.	包裹	N	bāoguǒ	parcel
7.	惊喜	N	jīngxǐ	pleasant surprise
8.	圣诞老人	N	Shèngdàn lǎorén	Santa Claus
9.	元旦	N	Yuándàn	New Year's Day
10.	春节	N	Chūn Jié	the Spring Festival
11.	感恩节	N	Gǎn'ēn Jié	Thanksgiving Day
12.	复活节	N	Fùhuó Jié	Easter

二、注释 Notes

① 不好意思。

"不好意思" originally meant "to feel shy", or "to find it embarrassing to do something". For example:

不好意思说　不好意思问　不好意思吃

At present, this phrase is often used to express apology. For example:

不好意思，我的宿舍很脏。

让你们等我，真不好意思。

② 这两天我太忙了，我想星期六一起洗。

"I've been very busy during the last few days. I want to wash them all on Saturday."

"这两天" means "during the last few days".

③ 她让我问你们好。

"She asks me to give her greetings to you."

"问 ... + Pr/NP + 好" is a construction used to convey greetings. For example:

他问你好。(He asked me to send you his greetings.)

(我请你)问他好。(I would like to ask you to send him my greetings.)

④ 你住的宿舍大不大？

"Is the dormitory you live in big?"

When the subject-verb phrase is used as an attributive, "的" must be placed between the attributive and the head word it modifies. For example:

他租的房子怎么样？

这是谁给你的书？

他常去买东西的商场很大。

⑤ 我们留学生楼两个人住一间。

"Two students live in a dormitory in our international student building."

三、练习与运用 Drills and practice

KEY SENTENCES

1. 你不在，我让她中午再给你打。
2. 我刚才去邮局给妈妈寄了点儿东西。
3. 她让我问你们好。
4. 我们也问他好。
5. 你住的宿舍大不大？
6. 祝你们圣诞快乐！

1. 熟读下列词组 Master the following phrases

(1) 给你　给爸爸　给田医生　给司机钱　给他香蕉　给大为中药
给他打了一个电话　给妈妈寄了一件礼物　给他做了一件事儿
给宋华买了一个生日蛋糕　给陆雨平打了一个电话　给马大为租了一间房子

(2) 再打一个电话　再吃一个苹果　再洗一件衣服　再说一遍(biàn)

(3) 刚才在餐厅　刚才在汉语系　刚才在留学生楼　刚才在陆雨平家
刚才去了邮局　刚才打扫了宿舍　刚才看了外婆　刚才看了电影

(4) 他问你好　杨老师问白小姐好　外婆问丁云和古波好　(我)请你问林娜好

(5) 常常去锻炼　常常回家　常常去旅行　常常在家喝咖啡　常常在一起说汉语

(6) 祝你生日快乐　祝你旅行快乐　祝你圣诞快乐　祝你工作快乐

2. 句型替换 Pattern drills

(1) 刚才丁力波给你来了一个电话。
他说什么？
他下午再给你打。

你哥哥	让你去邮局
陆雨平	给你租了一间大房子
张教授	请你星期四去一下学院

(2) 你的宿舍太脏了。
不好意思。这两天太忙了，我想明天打扫。

衣服	脏	洗
书和本子	多	整理(zhěnglǐ)
厨房	脏	打扫

(3) 爸爸，您身体好吗？
我身体很好。你妈妈问你好。
我也问她好。

田医生	陈老师
外婆	我姐姐
张教授	林娜

(4) 你每天下午做什么？
我每天下午锻炼。
晚上呢？
晚上复习课文。

上课	做练习
复习语法	写汉字
练习口语	看电视(diànshì)

(5) 他住的宿舍怎么样？
他住的宿舍很大。

租	房子	舒服
买	礼物	漂亮
寄	东西	贵
打工	公司	有名
穿	衣服	漂亮

(6) 今年你在哪儿过圣诞节？
我在北京过圣诞节。
我要送你一件圣诞礼物。祝你圣诞快乐。

元旦	元旦	元旦快乐
春节	春节	春节快乐
感恩节	感恩节	感恩节快乐
复活节	复活节	复活节快乐
生日	生日	生日快乐

3. 完成对话 Complete the following conversation

A：刚才你男朋友来了。你不在，我让他＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿。
B：谢谢。我刚才去学院＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿。
A：你男朋友今年多大？
B：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿。
A：他在哪儿工作？
B：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿。
A：他家有几口人？
B：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿。

4. 会话练习 Conversation practice

【抱怨与致歉 Making a complaint or an apology】

(1) A：你看一下你的表(biǎo, watch)，现在几点？
B：＿＿＿＿＿，我刚才有点儿事儿，来晚了。

(2) A：今天星期天，我要休息一下。
B：你能不能整理(zhěnglǐ)一下你的书？你的东西太多。
A：不好意思。我现在＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿，我不想今天整理。
B：你想什么时候整理？
A：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿。

【转达问候 Passing on someone's regards】

(1) A：张先生，你好吗？

B：我__________，你爸爸妈妈身体怎么样？

A：他们__________。

B：你爸爸妈妈今年多大岁数？

A：我爸爸今年______，妈妈______。

B：请你问他们好。

A：谢谢。他们也问你好。

(2) A：雨平，你怎么样？工作忙不忙？

B：我__________，你呢？

A：我现在在__________学习法语，也很忙。

B：你朋友好吗？

A：她很好。她让我问你好。

B：谢谢。请你也__________。

【节日祝愿 Extending holiday greetings】

(1) A：今天是元旦(Yuándàn)，祝你__________。

B：我也__________。

A：我有一件礼物给你。

B：啊，是__________。谢谢你。

(2) A：喂，哪一位啊？

B：我是__________。

A：是__________啊！你好吗？

B：______。今天是你的______生日，我要祝你__________。

A：谢谢。你的生日是哪天？

B：明天是我的生日。

A：我也祝你生日快乐。

【建议与邀请 Suggestions and invitations】

(1) A：明天你有时间吗？

B：明天我有时间。什么事儿？

A：我们去游泳(yóuyǒng)，好吗？

B：太好了！几点去？

A：__________。

(2) A：星期五你忙不忙？

B：不太忙。什么事儿？

A：我们有个聚会，你能不能参加？

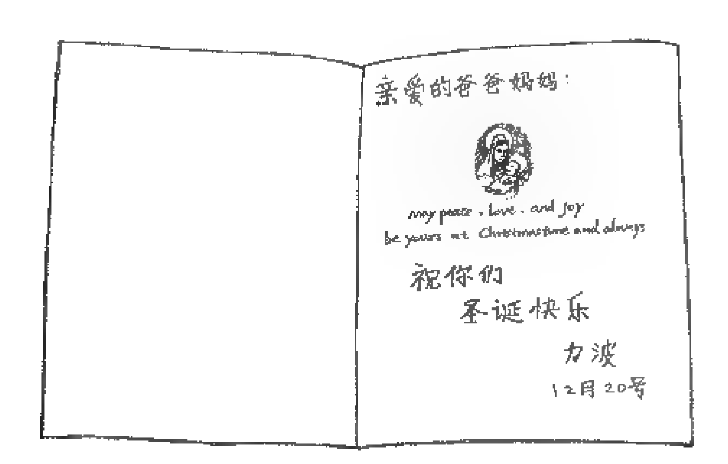
B：很抱歉(bàoqiàn)，__________。

5. 交际练习 Communication exercises

(1) Your new roommate moved in yesterday. Today you returned to the dormitory to find everything in a mess, including the kitchen and the bathroom. While you are complaining, your roommate apologizes over and over.

(2) You come across an old classmate whom you haven't seen for a long time. You ask how he/she is doing, and then ask him/her to give your regards to his/her family.

(3) On Christmas Eve, you and your friends are extending holiday greetings and wishes to one another. One of them mentions that it is his/her eighteenth birthday, so everyone wishes him/her a happy birthday.



四. 阅读和复述 Reading Comprehension and Paraphrasing

丁力波的日记

12月18日　星期五　天气　晴(qíng)

下星期五是圣诞节。这是我第一次(dì yī cì, the first time)在中国过圣诞节。我要跟小云一起去上海旅行。现在中国年轻(niánqīng, young)人也很喜欢过圣诞节。很多商场都有圣诞老人(lǎorén, old man)。商场东西很多，买东西的人也很多。

上午十点，我去邮局给爸爸妈妈寄了一个包裹(bāoguǒ)，是十张京剧光盘。爸爸很喜欢京剧，妈妈也喜欢，我想给他们一个惊喜(jīngxǐ)。我很想家，也想加拿大。

上午十点半，妈妈给我打了一个电话。我不在，大为让妈妈中午再给我打。

中午我接到(jiēdào, to receive)了妈妈的电话。我真高兴。爸爸妈妈身体都很好，他们工作都很忙。妈妈让我问外婆好。我告诉她哥哥弟弟也都很好，哥哥在中学打工，教英语；弟弟在南方旅行。我还给她介绍了我的好朋友马大为。爸爸妈妈圣诞节要去欧洲旅行，我祝他们旅行快乐。

爸爸妈妈也给我寄了一件圣诞礼物，我不知道那是什么礼物。

五. 语法 Grammar

1. 四种汉语句子 Four kinds of simple sentences

Simple Chinese sentences can be divided into four kinds according to the elements, which comprise the main part of their predicates.

(1)动词谓语句 Sentences with a verbal predicate

The majority of Chinese sentences have a verbal predicate and are relatively complex. Several types have already been studied and more examples will be introduced in later lessons. For example:

林娜的男朋友是医生。

他有一个姐姐。

我们学习汉语。

她回学院上课。

我们请他吃饭。

(2) 形容词谓语句 Sentences with an adjectival predicate

In a sentence with an adjectival predicate "是" is not needed. For example:

我很好。

他这两天太忙。

(3) 名词谓语句 Sentences with a nominal predicate

In a sentence with a nominal predicate, nouns, noun phrases, or numeral-measure words function directly as the main elements of the predicate, which especially describe age or price. In spoken language, it is also used to express time, birthplace, and so on. For example:

马大为二十二岁。

一斤苹果两块五。

现在八点半。

今天星期天。

宋华北京人。

(4)主谓谓语句 Sentences with a subject-predicate phrase as predicate

In a sentence with a subject-predicate phrase as predicate, the thing denoted by the subject of the subject-predicate phrase is usually a part of the thing denoted by the subject of the whole sentence. The subject-predicate phrase describes or explains the subject of the whole sentence. For example:

你身体怎么样？

我头疼。

他学习很好。

2. 六种提问方法 Six question types

(1) 用"吗"提问 Questions with "吗"

This is the most commonly used type of question. The person who asks this kind of question has some idea concerning the answer. For example:

您是张教授吗？

你现在很忙吗？

明天你不来学院吗？

(2) 正反疑问句 V/A-not-V/A question

This type of question is also frequently used. The person who asks this kind of question has no idea concerning the answer. For example:

你朋友认识不认识他?

你们学院大不大?

你有没有弟弟?

他去没去那个公司?

(3) 用疑问代词的问句 Questions with an interrogative pronoun

By using "谁", "什么", "哪", "哪儿", "怎么", "怎么样", "多少" and "几", this type of question specifically asks who, what, which, where, how, how about, or how many. For example:

今天几号?

他是哪国人?

他的房子怎么样?

(4) 用"还是"的选择问句 Alternative questions with "还是"

There are two (or more) possibilities in this type of question for the person addressed to choose from. For example:

他是英国人还是美国人?

我们上午去还是下午去?

你喜欢香蕉还是喜欢苹果?

(5) 用"好吗?"(或"是不是?"、"是吗?"、"可以吗?")的问句 Tag questions with "好吗?", "是不是?", "是吗?" or "可以吗?"

Questions with "好吗?" or "可以吗?" are usually used to ask someone's opinion concerning the suggestion put forward in the first part of the sentence. Questions with "是不是?" or "是吗?" are usually used to confirm the judgement made in the first part of the sentence. For example:

我们去锻炼,好吗?

您学习汉语,是不是?

(6) 用"呢"的省略式问句 Elliptical questions with the question particle "呢"

The meaning of this type of question is usually illustrated clearly by the previous sentence. For example:

我很好,你呢?

他上午没有课,你呢?

六、汉字 Chinese Characters

1. 音序查字法 Consulting a Chinese dictionary arranged by *pinyin* alphabetic order

In many Chinese dictionaries the entries are arranged alphabetically according to Chinese Phonetics (*Hanyu pinyin*). Characters with the same *pinyin* spelling are put under the same entry and then sub-divided according to their tones. Characters in the same tone group are arranged in order, according to their number of strokes. When the pronunciation of a character is known, characters are easy to find in this type of dictionary.

2. 认写基本汉字 Learn and write basic Chinese characters

(1) 才 一 十 才
cái just 3 strokes

(2) 由 丨 冂 日 曰 由
yóu by 5 strokes

(3) 州 丶 丿 ⺌ 州 州 州
zhōu state 6 strokes
("川" is a drawing of a river and the three dots "、" show its islets.)

3. 认写课文中的汉字 Learn and write the Chinese characters appearing in the texts

廴 (jiànzhīpáng) (the "construction" side) 3 廴 2 strokes

(1) 圣诞 Shèngdàn (聖誕)

圣 → 又 + 土 5 strokes

诞 → 讠 + 㢟 + 廴 9 strokes

(2) 刚才 gāngcái (剛纔)

刚 → 冈 + 刂 6 strokes

(The pronunciation is indicated by "冈".)

(3) 邮局 yóujú (郵局)

邮 → 由 + 阝 7 strokes

(The pronunciation is shown by "由".)

局 → 尸 + 可　　7 strokes

(4) 寄 jì

寄 → 宀 + 大 + 可　　11 strokes

(5) 打扫 dǎsǎo （打掃）

扫 → 扌 + 彐　　6 strokes

(The meaning is indicated by "扌".)

(6) 脏 zāng （髒）

脏 → 月 + 广 + 土　　10 strokes

(7) 洗 xǐ

洗 → 氵 + 先　　9 strokes

(8) 外婆 wàipó

婆 → 波 + 女　　11 strokes

(The meaning is suggested by "女".)

羊　　丶 丷 䒑 兰 羊　　5 strokes

(9) 南方 nánfāng

南 → 十 + 冂 + 羊　　9 strokes

⻖ (lǚzìbiān) (the "travel" side)　　4 strokes

亍 chù　　一 二 亍　　3 strokes

(10) 旅行 lǚxíng

旅 → 方 + 𠂉 + ⻖　　10 strokes

行 → 彳 + 亍　　6 strokes

𠂎 (liúzìjiǎo) (the "keeping" corner)　　3 strokes

(11) 留学生 liúxuéshēng （留學生）

留 → 𠂎 + 刀 + 田　　10 strokes

(12) 念 niàn （唸）

念 → 今 + 心　　8 strokes

(13) 生词 shēngcí （生詞）

词 → 讠 + 司　　7 strokes

(The meaning side is "讠".)

(14) 复习 fùxí （複習）

复 → 𠂉 + 日 + 夂　　9 strokes

(15) 练习 liànxí （練習）

练 → 纟 + 东　　8 strokes

(16) 语法 yǔfǎ （語法）

法 → 氵 + 去　　8 strokes

(17) 节 jié （節）

节 → 艹 + 卩　　5 strokes

牜 (niúzìpáng) (the "ox" side) (On the left side of a multi–component character, "牛" is written as "牜".)　　丿 𠂉 牛 牜　　4 strokes

(18) 礼物 lǐwù （禮物）

礼 → 礻 + 乚　　5 strokes

物 → 牜 + 勿　　8 strokes

(The pronunciation is indicated by "勿".)

(19) 欧洲 Ōuzhōu （歐洲）

欧 → 区 + 欠　　8 strokes

洲 → 氵 + 州　　9 strokes

(The meaning side is "氵", and the phonetic side is "州". The character "洲" means an islet in a river or a continent in the ocean.)

(20) 上海 Shànghǎi

海 → 氵 + 每　　10 strokes

文化知识 Cultural Notes

Beijing, Shanghai, the Changjiang River, the Huanghe River, and the Great Wall

Beijing is the capital of the People's Republic of China as well as its chief cultural, political, and economic centre. As the capital city for much of the last eight hundred years, Beijing is rich in historic sites, including the Forbidden City (Palace Museum), the Summer Palace, and the Temple of Heaven. Modern Beijing is fast becoming a cosmopolitan city as its economy continues to develop.

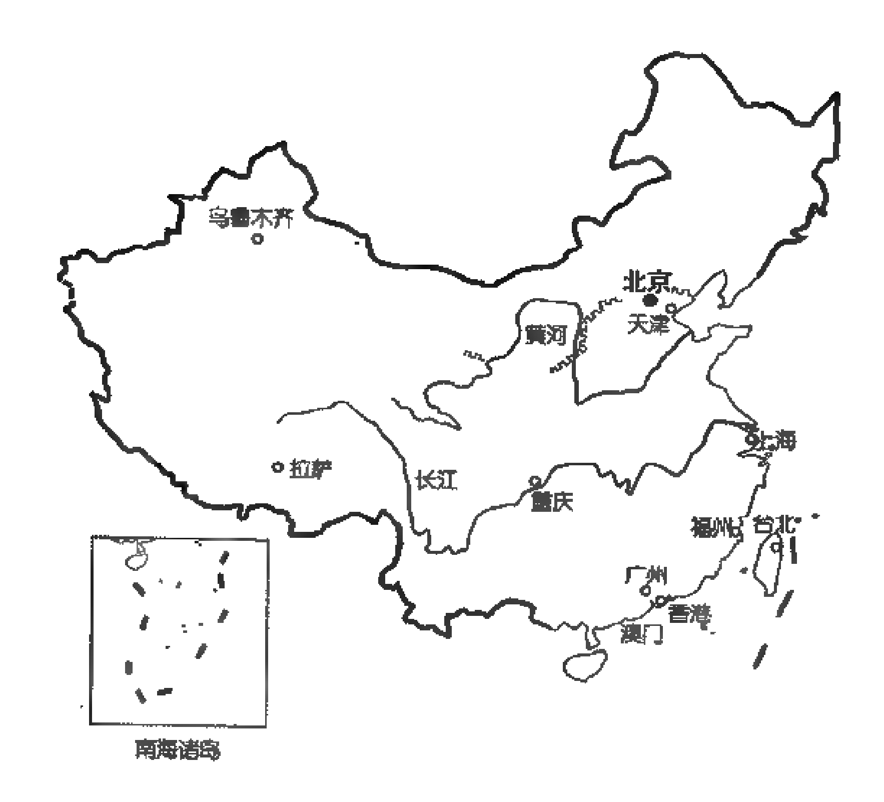
Shanghai is China's biggest city in terms of population and its largest industrial centre.

The Changjiang, literally, the "Long River", is commonly known as the Yangtze River in English. It is the longest river in China and one of the longest in the world. From its origin in western China, it stretches 6,300 kilometres to where it enters the East China Sea near Shanghai on the east coast.

The Huanghe, or literally "Yellow River", is the second longest river in China, flowing a total of 5,467 kilometres. The Huanghe River valley is considered by many to be the cradle of ancient Chinese civilization.

Construction of the Great Wall began more than 2,200 years ago. It ranks among the seven architectural wonders of the ancient world and is the only cultural artifact on the earth visible from outer space with the naked eye. The present Great Wall extends more than 2,500 kilometres, but there are actually over six thousand kilometres of walls, since there are numerous stretches where several walls run parallel to each other. Six thousand kilometres are more than twelve thousand *li*, so the Great Wall is often referred to as the *wanli changcheng* or the "Long Wall of Ten Thousand *Li*".

Map of China



语法术语缩略形式一览表
Abbreviations for Grammar Terms

Abbreviation	*Grammar Terms in English*	*Grammar Terms in Chinese*	*Grammar Terms in Pinyin*
A	*Adjective*	形容词	xíngróngcí
Adv	*Adverb*	副词	fùcí
AsPt	*Aspect Particle*	动态助词	dòngtài zhùcí
Conj	*Conjunction*	连词	liáncí
IE	*Idiom Expression*	习惯用语	xíguàn yòngyǔ
Int	*Interjection*	叹词	tàncí
M	*Measure Word*	量词	liàngcí
MdPt	*Modal Particle*	语气助词	yǔqì zhùcí
N	*Noun*	名词	míngcí
NP	*Noun Phrase*	名词词组	míngcí cízǔ
Nu	*Numerals*	数词	shùcí
O	*Object*	宾语	bīnyǔ
Ono	*Onomatopoeia*	象声词	xiàngshēngcí
OpV	*Optative Verb*	能愿动词	néngyuàn dòngcí
Pt	*Particle*	助词	zhùcí
PN	*Proper Noun*	专有名词	zhuānyǒu míngcí
Pr	*Pronoun*	代词	dàicí
Pref	*Prefix*	词头	cítóu
Prep	*Preposition*	介词	jiècí
PW	*Place Word*	地点词	dìdiǎncí
QPt	*Question Particle*	疑问助词	yíwèn zhùcí
QPr	*Question Pronoun*	疑问代词	yíwèn dàicí
S	*Subject*	主语	zhǔyǔ
StPt	*Structural Particle*	结构助词	jiégòu zhùcí
Suf	*Suffix*	词尾	cíwěi
TW	*Time Word*	时间词	shíjiāncí
V	*Verb*	动词	dòngcí
VC	*Verb plus Complement*	动补式动词	dòngbǔshì dòngcí
VO	*Verb plus Object*	动宾式动词	dòngbīnshì dòngcí
VP	*Verbal Phrase*	动词词组	dòngcí cízǔ

生词索引(简繁对照)
Vocabulary Index
(Simplified Script with Traditional Version)

词条	繁体	词性	拼音	英译	课号
A					
啊		(Int)	à	ah, oh	7
B					
吧		(MdPt)	ba	(modal particle)	12
爸爸		(N)	bàba	dad	2,7
百		(Nu)	bǎi	hundred	8
拜拜		(IE)	báibái	bye-bye(transliteration)	11
办	辦	(V)	bàn	to do	13
半		(Nu)	bàn	half	11
帮助	幫助	(V)	bāngzhù	to help	13
报		(N)	bào	newspaper	10
抱歉		(V/A)	bàoqiàn	to feel sorry/sorry	6
北京		(PN)	Běijīng	Beijing	9
贝贝	貝貝	(PN)	Bèibei	(name of a dog)	8
本子		(N)	běnzi	notebook	10
遍		(M)	biàn	number of times (of action)	6
不		(Adv)	bù	not; no	2
不好意思		(IE)	bù hǎoyìsi	to feel embarrassed	14
不用		(Adv)	búyòng	need not	5
C					
参加	參加	(V)	cānjiā	to participate; to attend	9
餐厅	餐廳	(N)	cāntīng	dining room	5
厕所	廁所	(N)	cèsuǒ	toilet	13
层	層	(M)	céng	story; floor	5
差		(V)	chà	to be short of, lack	11
常常		(Adv)	chángcháng	often	10
常		(Adv)	cháng	often	10

陈	陳	(PN)	Chén	(a surname)	3,11
吃		(V)	chī	to eat	9
吃饭	吃飯	(VO)	chīfàn	to eat (a meal)	13
出生		(V)	chūshēng	to be born	9
厨房	廚房	(N)	chúfáng	kitchen	13
穿		(V)	chuān	to wear	12

D

打电话	打電話	(V O)	dǎ diànhuà	to make a phone call	13
打工		(V)	dǎgōng	to have a part-time job	14
打球		(V O)	dǎqiú	to play ball	6,11
打扫	打掃	(V)	dǎsǎo	to clean	14
大		(A)	dà	big, large	8
蛋糕		(N)	dàngāo	cake	9
当然	當然	(A)	dāngrán	as it should be; only natural that	8
到		(V)	dào	to arrive	11
得		(V)	dé	to have, to get	13
的		(Pt)	de	(a possessive or modifying particle)	4
等		(V)	děng	to wait	13
弟弟		(N)	dìdi	younger brother	2,8
点(钟)	點(鐘)	(N)	diǎn(zhōng)	o'clock	11
电话	電話	(N)	diànhuà	telephone; phone call	13
电影	電影	(N)	diànyǐng	movie	13
丁		(PN)	Dīng	(a surname)	2
丁力波		(PN)	Dīng Lìbō	(name of a Canadian student)	7
东西	東西	(N)	dōngxi	things; objects	11
都		(Adv)	dōu	both; all	2,3
锻炼	鍛煉	(V)	duànliàn	to do physical exercise	12
对	對	(A)	duì	right, correct	14
对不起	對不起	(IE)	duìbuqǐ	I'm sorry	5,10
多大		(IE)	duō dà	how old	9
多		(Adv)	duō	how	9
多少		(QPr)	duōshao	how many, how much	8
多		(A)	duō	many, much	8

E

二		(Nu)	èr	two	5

F

发烧	發燒	(VO)	fāshāo	to have a fever	12
发炎	發炎	(V)	fāyán	to become inflamed	12
房子		(N)	fángzi	house	13
房租		(N)	fángzū	rent (for a house, flat, etc)	13
分		(M)	fēn	minute	11
分(钱)	分(錢)	(M)	fēn(qián)	(measure word of Chinese monetary unit, equal to 1/100 块); cent	10
复习	複習	(V)	fùxí	to review	14

G

感冒		(V/N)	gǎnmào	to have a cold/cold	12
刚才	剛纔	(Adv)	gāngcái	just now	14
高兴	高興	(A)	gāoxìng	happy; pleased	4,7
告诉	告訴	(V)	gàosu	to tell	13
哥哥		(N)	gēge	elder brother	2
个	個	(M)	gè	(a measure word for general use)	8
给	給	(V)	gěi	to give	10
给	給	(Prep)	gěi	to; for	12
跟		(Prep/V)	gēn	with/to follow	10
工作		(V/N)	gōngzuò	to work/work	8
公司		(N)	gōngsī	company	13
狗		(N)	gǒu	dog	8
姑娘		(N)	gūniang	girl	13
挂号	掛號	(V)	guàhào	to register (at a hospital, etc.)	12
光盘	光盤	(N)	guāngpán	CD	10
贵	貴	(A)	guì	expensive, precious	10
贵姓	貴姓	(IE)	guì xìng	what's your honorable surname?	4
国	國	(N)	guó	country, nation	3
过	過	(V)	guò	to spend (time); to celebrate (a birthday, a holiday)	14

H

还	還	(Adv)	hái	in addition	8,11
还是	還是	(Conj)	háishi	or	12
汉语	漢語	(N)	Hànyǔ	Chinese (language)	4
汉字	漢字	(N)	Hànzì	Chinese character	11
好		(A)	hǎo	good; well; fine; O.K.	1,5
号	號	(N)	hào	number	5,9
喝		(V)	hē	to drink	2,9
和		(Conj)	hé	and	8
很		(Adv)	hěn	very	1,7
红葡萄酒	紅葡萄酒	(N)	hóng pútaojiǔ	red wine	9
回		(V)	huí	to return	11

J

几	幾	(QPr)	jǐ	how many, how much	8
记者	記者	(N)	jìzhě	reporter	4
寄		(V)	jì	to post, to mail	14
加拿大		(PN)	Jiānádà	Canada	4,7
家		(N)	jiā	family, home	8
家美		(PN)	Jiāměi	(name of a house rental agency)	13
间	間	(M)	jiān	(a measure word for room, house, etc)	13
件		(M)	jiàn	(a measure word) piece	13
叫		(V)	jiào	to be called	4
教		(V)	jiāo	to teach	11
教授		(N)	jiàoshòu	professor	7
节	節	(N)	jié	festival	14
姐姐		(N)	jiějie	elder sister	8
介绍	介紹	(V)	jièshào	to introduce	7
今年		(N)	jīnnián	this year	9
年		(N)	nián	year	
今天		(N)	jīntiān	today	6,9
斤		(M)	jīn	(measure word of weight, equal to 500g)	10
进	進	(V)	jìn	to enter	5
进来	進來	(VC)	jìnlai	to come in	4

京剧	京劇	(N)	jīngjù	Beijing opera	6
经理	經理	(N)	jīnglǐ	manager	13
聚会	聚會	(N)	jùhuì	get-together; party	9

K

咖啡		(N)	kāfēi	coffee	2,13
开学	開學	(VO)	kāixué	to start school	7
看		(V)	kàn	to watch, to look at	7
看病		(VO)	kànbìng	to see a doctor	12
烤鸭	烤鴨	(N)	kǎoyā	roast duck	9
可爱	可愛	(A)	kě'ài	lovely, cute	8
可能		(OpV)	kěnéng	maybe	13
可是		(Conj)	kěshì	but	13
可以		(OpV)	kěyǐ	may	4,11
刻		(M)	kè	quarter (of an hour)	11
课	課	(N)	kè	class; lesson	9
课文	課文	(N)	kèwén	text	14
恐怕		(Adv)	kǒngpà	to be afraid that; perhaps	6
口		(M)	kǒu	(a measure word mainly for the number of people in a family)	8
口语	口語	(N)	kǒuyǔ	spoken language	14
块(钱)	塊(錢)	(M)	kuài(qián)	(measure word of basic Chinese monetary unit, equal to 10 毛); dollar	10
快乐	快樂	(A)	kuàilè	happy	9

L

来	來	(V)	lái	to come	4
老师	老師	(N)	lǎoshī	teacher	3
冷		(A)	lěng	cold	12
礼物	禮物	(N)	lǐwù	gift; present	11,14
力波		(PN)	Lìbō	(name of a Canadian student)	1
练习	練習	(V/N)	liànxí	to practice/exercise	14
两		(Nu)	liǎng	two	8
了		(Pt)	le	(modal partical/aspect partical)	5,9
梁祝		(PN)	Liáng Zhù	(name of a Chinese violin concerto)	10

林娜		(PN)	Lín Nà	(name of a British student)	1
○		(Nu)	líng	zero	5
留学生	留學生	(N)	liúxuéshēng	student studying abroad; international student	14
楼	樓	(N)	lóu	building	14
陆雨平	陸雨平	(PN)	Lù Yǔpíng	(name of a Chinese reporter)	1
旅行		(V)	lǚxíng	to travel	14

M

妈妈	媽媽	(N)	māma	mom	2
马大为	馬大爲	(PN)	Mǎ Dàwéi	(name of an American student)	4,7
吗	嗎	(QPt)	ma	(Interrogative particle for question expecting yes-no answer)	1,2
买	買	(V)	mǎi	to buy	9
忙		(A)	máng	busy	2,6
毛(钱)	毛(錢)	(M)	máo(qián)	(measure word of Chinese monetary unit, equal to 1/10 块); dime	10
没		(Adv)	méi	not	8
没关系	没關係	(IE)	méi guānxi	never mind; it doesn't matter	5
每		(Pr)	měi	every; each	12
美国	美國	(PN)	Měiguó	the United States; America	4,7
美术	美術	(N)	měishù	fine arts	7
妹妹		(N)	mèimei	younger sister	8
们	們	(Suf)	tā	(used after pronouns 我,们,他 or certain nouns to denote plural)	2,3
名片		(N)	míngpiàn	calling card	7
名字		(N)	míngzi	name	7
明天		(N)	míngtiān	tomorrow	6

N

哪		(QPr)	nǎ	which	3
哪儿	哪兒	(QPr)	nǎr	where	5
哪里	哪裏	(IE)	nǎli	no (an expression of modest denial)	11
那		(Pr)	nà	that	3
那儿	那兒	(Pr)	nàr	there	[illegible]
奶奶		(N)	nǎinai	grandmother on the father's side	3

男		(A)	nán	male	2,8
南方		(N)	nánfāng	south	14
呢		(MdPt)	ne	(a modal particle used for elliptical questions)	1,2
能		(OpV)	néng	can; be able to	11
你		(Pr)	nǐ	you	1,3
你们	你們	(Pr)	nǐmen	you(pl.)	6
念	唸	(V)	niàn	to read	14
您		(Pr)	nín	you (polite form)	3,4
女		(A)	nǚ	female	5

O

欧洲	歐洲	(PN)	Ōuzhōu	Europe	14

P

朋友		(N)	péngyou	friend	2,4
漂亮		(A)	piàoliang	pretty, beautiful; nice	9
瓶		(M)	píng	bottle	9
苹果	蘋果	(N)	píngguǒ	apple	10
葡萄		(N)	pútao	grape	10

Q

起床		(VO)	qǐchuáng	to get up	11
钱	錢	(N)	qián	money	10
请	請	(V)	qǐng	please	4
请问	請問	(V)	qǐngwèn	May I ask...?	4,5
去		(V)	qù	to go	6
全身		(N)	quánshēn	all over (the body)	12

R

让	讓	(V)	ràng	to let; to allow; to make	13
人		(N)	rén	people, person	3
认识	認識	(V)	rènshi	to know (somebody)	4
容易		(A)	róngyì	easy	10

S

散步		(VO)	sànbù	to take a walk; to walk	13
嗓子		(N)	sǎngzi	throat	12
商场	商場	(N)	shāngchǎng	market; bazaar; shopping mall	10

上海		(PN)	Shànghǎi	Shanghai	14
上课	上課	(VO)	shàngkè	to go to class (both students and teachers)	11
上午		(N)	shàngwǔ	morning	9
谁	誰	(QPr)	shéi	who; whom	3,7
身体	身體	(N)	shēntǐ	body, health	12
什么	甚麼	(QPr)	shénme	what	4,6
生词	生詞	(N)	shēngcí	new word	14
生日		(N)	shēngri	birthday	9
圣诞	聖誕	(PN)	Shèngdàn	Christmas	14
师傅	師傅	(N)	shīfu	master worker	10
时候	時候	(N)	shíhou	time; moment	6
时间	時間	(N)	shíjiān	time	6
事儿	事兒	(N)	shìr	matter; affair; thing	13
是		(V)	shì	to be	3
寿面	壽麵	(N)	shòumiàn	(birthday) longevity noodles	9
书	書	(N)	shū	book	10
舒服		(A)	shūfu	comfortable	12
水		(N)	shuǐ	water	12
睡觉	睡覺	(VO)	shuìjiào	to sleep	11
睡		(V)	shuì	to sleep	11
说	說	(V)	shuō	to say; to speak	6
司机	司機	(N)	sījī	driver	11
四		(Nu)	sì	four	5
宋华	宋華	(PN)	Sòng Huá	(name of a Chinese student)	5,9
送		(N)	sòng	to give (as a present)	10
宿舍		(N)	sùshè	dormitory	5,13
岁	歲	(M)	suì	year (of age)	9
岁数	歲數	(N)	suìshu	years (of age)	11
孙女儿	孫女兒	(N)	sūnnǚr	granddaughter on son's side	11

T

他们	他們	(Pr)	tāmen	they; them	2,3
他		(Pr)	tā	he; him	2,3
她		(Pr)	tā	she; her	3
太		(Adv)	tài	too; extremely	6

疼		(A)	téng	painful	12
天		(N)	tiān	day	6
天气	天氣	(N)	tiānqì	weather	6
听说	聽說	(V)	tīngshuō	to be told	13
头	頭	(N)	tóu	head	12

W

外国	外國	(N)	wàiguó	foreign country	8
外婆		(N)	wàipó	grandmother on the mother's side	3,14
外语	外語	(N)	wàiyǔ	foreign language	3,8
玩儿	玩兒	(V)	wánr	to have fun, to play	11
晚		(A)	wǎn	late	5,11
晚上		(N)	wǎnshang	evening, night	11
王小云	王小雲	(PN)	Wáng Xiǎoyún	(name of a Chinese student)	5,8
为什么	爲甚麼	(Qpr)	wèishénme	why	11
位		(M)	wèi	(a polite measure word for person)	13
喂		(Int)	wèi	hello; hey	13
文学	文學	(N)	wénxué	literature	7
问	問	(V)	wèn	to ask	7
问题	問題	(N)	wèntí	question	11
我		(Pr)	wǒ	I; me	1,5
我们	我們	(Pr)	wǒmen	we; us	2

X

西药	西藥	(N)	xīyào	Western medicine	12
洗		(V)	xǐ	to wash	14
喜欢	喜歡	(V)	xǐhuan	to like, to prefer	8
系		(N)	xì	faculty; department	7
下午		(N)	xiàwǔ	afternoon	9
先生		(N)	xiānsheng	Mr.	4,10
现在	現在	(N)	xiànzài	now	6
香蕉苹果	香蕉蘋果	(N)	xiāngjiāopíngguǒ	apple with a banana taste	10
香蕉		(N)	xiāngjiāo	banana	10
想		(V/OpV)	xiǎng	to think; to miss/to want to do sth.	12,14
小		(A)	xiǎo	little, small	8
小姐		(N)	xiǎojiě	Miss; young lady	5

写	寫	(V)	xiě	to write	11
谢谢	謝謝	(V)	xièxie	to thank	5,6
星期		(N)	xīngqī	week	9
星期日		(N)	xīngqīrì	Sunday	9
行		(V)	xíng	to be O.K.	6
姓		(V/N)	xìng	one's surname is.../surname	4
休息		(V)	xiūxi	to take a rest	12
学生	學生	(N)	xuésheng	student	4,5
学习	學習	(V)	xuéxí	to learn; to study	4,7
学院	學院	(N)	xuéyuàn	institute; college	4,7

Y

杨	楊	(PN)	Yáng	(a surname)	4
药	藥	(N)	yào	medicine	12
要		(V/OpV)	yào	to want/must; to want to do sth.	2,10,12
也		(Adv)	yě	too; also	1
(一)点儿	(一)點兒	(Nu-M)	(yì)diǎnr	a little bit	11
一共		(Adv)	yígòng	altogether	8
一起		(Adv.)	yìqǐ	together	12
一下			yíxià	(used after a verb to indicate a short, quick, random, informal action)	7
衣服		(N)	yīfu	clothes	12
医生	醫生	(N)	yīshēng	doctor; physician	3
医院	醫院	(N)	yīyuàn	hospital	12
音乐	音樂	(N)	yīnyuè	music	7,10
应该	應該	(OpV)	yīnggāi	should; ought to	11
英国	英國	(PN)	Yīngguó	Great Britain; England	4
英语	英語	(N)	Yīngyǔ	English	11
邮局	郵局	(N)	yóujú	post office	14
游泳		(VO)	yóuyǒng	to swim	6
有		(V)	yǒu	to have	6
有点儿	有點兒	(Adv)	yǒudiǎnr	somewhat; rather; a bit	12
有名		(A)	yǒumíng	famous	10
有意思		(IE)	yǒu yìsi	interesting	6
语法	語法	(N)	yǔfǎ	grammar	14
语言	語言	(N)	yǔyán	language	4
愿意	願意	(OpV)	yuànyì	to be willing to do sth.	12

Z

再见	再見	(IE)	zàijiàn	good-bye	5
再		(Adv)	zài	again	9
在		(V)	zài	to be (here, there); to be (in, on, at)	5,10
脏	髒	(A)	zāng	dirty	14
怎么	怎麽	(QPr)	zěnme	how	10
怎么样	怎麽樣	(QPr)	zěnmeyàng	how is it?	6,9
张	張	(PN)	Zhāng	(a surname)	7
张	張	(M)	zhāng	(a measure word for flat objects)	8
找		(V)	zhǎo	to look for	13
找(钱)	找(錢)	(V)	zhǎo(qián)	to give change	10
照片		(N)	zhàopiàn	picture, photo	8
这	這	(Pr)	zhè	this	3,5
这儿	這兒	(Pr)	zhèr	here	5
真	真	(A/Adv)	zhēn	real/really	8
知道		(V)	zhīdao	to know	5
中国	中國	(PN)	Zhōngguó	China	3
中文		(N)	Zhōngwén	Chinese	7
中午		(N)	zhōngwǔ	noon	14
中学	中學	(N)	zhōngxué	middle school	14
中药	中藥	(N)	zhōngyào	traditional Chinese medicine	12
属	屬	(V)	shǔ	to be born in the year of	9
住院		(VO)	zhùyuàn	to be in hospital; to be hospitalized	12
住		(V)	zhù	to live; to stay	14
祝贺	祝賀	(V)	zhùhè	to congratulate	9
祝		(V)	zhù	to wish	9
专业	專業	(N)	zhuānyè	major; specialty	7
租		(V)	zū	to rent	13
昨天		(N)	zuótiān	yesterday	6,11
坐		(V)	zuò	to sit	5
做		(V)	zuò	to do; to make	8,10

补 充 词 汇
Supplementary Words

词条	繁体	词性	拼音	英译	课号
B					
包裹		(N)	bāoguǒ	parcel	14
包括		(V)	bāokuò	to include	13
杯	盃	(M)	bēi	cup of	10
本		(M)	běn	(measure word for books and notebooks)	10
笔	筆	(N)	bǐ	pen	10
便宜		(A)	piányi	cheap; inexpensive	10
表	錶	(N)	biǎo	watch	11
C					
茶		(N)	chá	tea	9
唱歌		(VO)	chànggē	to sing(a song)	11
车	車	(N)	chē	car; vehicle	8
春节	春節	(N)	Chūn Jié	the Spring Festival	14
词典	詞典	(N)	cídiǎn	dictionary	8
D					
打的		(VO)	dǎdī	to take a taxi	11
打针	打針	(VO)	dǎzhēn	to have an injection	12
大便		(N)	dàbiàn	stool	12
电脑	電腦	(N)	diànnǎo	computer	8
电视	電視	(N)	diànshì	TV	14
肚子		(N)	dùzi	abdomen; stomach	12
F					
方便		(A)	fāngbiàn	convenient	13
份		(M)	fèn	(measure word for publications such as newspapers)	10
复活节	復活節	(N)	Fùhuó Jié	Easter	14
G					
感恩节	感恩節	(N)	Gǎn'ēn Jié	Thanksgiving Day	14
工程师	工程師	(N)	gōngchéngshī	engineer	8
H					
孩子		(N)	háizi	child	8
汉堡	漢堡	(N)	hànbǎo	hamburger	9
合适	合適	(A)	héshì	suitable	13
化学	化學	(N)	huàxué	chemistry	7
化验	化驗	(V)	huàyàn	to have a medical test	12
回答		(V)	huídá	to answer	11
回信		(N/VO)	huíxìn	reply/to reply	13
J					
教育		(N)	jiàoyù	education	7
经济	經濟	(N)	jīngjì	economy	7
惊喜	驚喜	(N)	jīngxǐ	pleasant surprise	14
K					
开车	開車	(VO)	kāichē	to drive a car	11
开刀	開刀	(VO)	kāidāo	to have an operation	12
可乐	可樂	(N)	kělè	coke	9
客厅	客廳	(N)	kètīng	living room	13
L					
历史	歷史	(N)	lìshǐ	history	7
凉快	涼快	(A)	liángkuai	cool	12
律师	律師	(N)	lǜshī	lawyer	8
乱	亂	(A)	luàn	in disorder; in a mess	14
M					
卖	賣	(V)	mài	to sell	10
米饭	米飯	(N)	mǐfàn	(cooked) rice	9
面包	麵包	(N)	miànbāo	bread	9
N					
难	難	(A)	nán	difficult	11
牛奶		(N)	niúnǎi	milk	9

P

啤酒		(N)	píjiǔ	beer	9

Q

巧		(A)	qiǎo	coincidental	13
晴		(A)	qíng	sunny	14

R

热	熱	(A)	rè	hot	12
热狗	熱狗	(N)	règǒu	hotdog	9
热心	熱心	(A)	rèxīn	enthusiastic	13
日记	日記	(N)	rìjì	diary	14

S

生活		(N)	shēnghuó	life	12
圣诞老人	聖誕老人	(N)	Shèngdàn lǎorén	Santa Claus	14
售货员	售貨員	(N)	shòuhuòyuán	shop assistant; salesperson	10
书店	書店	(N)	shūdiàn	book store	10
书房	書房	(N)	shūfáng	a study	13
数学	數學	(N)	shùxué	mathematics	7
水电费	水電費	(N)	shuǐdiànfèi	utility	13

T

套		(M)	tào	suite	13
体育馆	體育館	(N)	tǐyùguǎn	gym	10
跳舞		(VO)	tiàowǔ	to dance	11

W

外公		(N)	wàigōng	grandfather on the mother's side	8
文化		(N)	wénhuà	culture	7
卧室	臥室	(N)	wòshì	bedroom	13
物理		(N)	wùlǐ	physics	7

X

西餐		(N)	xīcān	Western food	9
吸烟	吸煙	(VO)	xīyān	to smoke	11

系主任		(N)	xìzhǔrèn	chairman of the department	8
下课	下課	(VO)	xiàkè	to get out of class; to finish class	11
小便		(N)	xiǎobiàn	urine	12
新		(A)	xīn	new	13
选修	選修	(V)	xuǎnxiū	to take an elective course	7
雪碧		(N)	xuěbì	Sprite	9
血		(N)	xiě	blood	12

Y

牙		(N)	yá	tooth	12
爷爷	爺爺	(N)	yéye	grandfather on the father's side	8
音乐	音樂	(N)	yīnyuè	music	7
英文		(N)	Yīngwén	English	12
元		(M)	yuán	(the same as "块", but used in written language)	10
元旦		(N)	Yuándàn	New Year's Day	14

Z

哲学	哲學	(N)	zhéxué	philosophy	7
整理		(V)	zhěnglǐ	to put in order; to arrange; to sort out	14
支		(M)	zhī	(a measure word for stick-like things such as pens)	10
中餐		(N)	zhōngcān	Chinese food	9
助教		(N)	zhùjiào	teaching assistant	8
作家		(N)	zuòjiā	writer	10